# Pilot's Guide to ForeFlight Mobile



50th Edition - Covers ForeFlight Mobile v9.0.1 on iPad

Introduction	18
iPad Tips	18
Setting-up ForeFlight Mobile	20
Airports	21
About the Design	22
Finding an Airport using Search	22
Finding an Airport using Browse	23
Favorite Airports List	24
Recent Airports List	25
Favorite and Recent Airport Sync	25
Viewing Airport Weather	26
Model Output Statistics (MOS) Forecasts	27
Runway Winds	29
Viewing a Procedure	30
Swipe to Change Plates	31
Using Geo-Referenced Procedures	33
FBO Information	34
Fuel prices	34
Comments	35
Airport/Facility Directory (A/FD) or Canada Flight Supplement (CFS).	
Airport and Aircraft Flight Tracking	37

Maps	38
About the Design	38
Pinch, Zoom, and Pan	
Changing Maps / Map Overlay	
Global Aeronautical Maps	47
Aeronautical Maps Features	48
Aeronautical Maps Symbols	50
Maps Settings	51
Map Touch	54
Smart Airway Labels	56
Airport popup	57
Weather Overlay Color Coding	58
Attitude Indicator / Synthetic Vision (iPad only)	60
IMPORTANT NOTICE: ATTITUDE INDICATOR DISPLAY	61
Stratus 2/2S Positioning	63
Calibrate the AI/SV display	63
Synthetic Vision required downloads	64
Finding an Airport or Navigation Aid using Search	65
Planning a Flight using Search	66
Planning a Flight using Touch	68
Airspace Information	70
Route Line	70

Managing User Waypoints	71
User Waypoint Sync	72
Working with the Navigation Log, Edit and Profile Views	72
Overview	72
Edit View	75
Procedure Advisor	77
Reverse	84
Routes	85
NavLog View	86
Profile View	87
Single-waypoint Search	93
Engaging the Moving Map	93
Track Up	94
Distance Rings	95
Glide Advisor™	97
Track Vector	
Direct-To	100
Ruler	100
Viewing and Hiding the Instrument Panel	101
Using Favorite Routes	103
Using Recent Routes	103
Favorite and Recent Route Sync	103
Clearing a Route	104

Alerts	105
About The Design	105
Runway Proximity Advisor	105
Cabin Altitude Advisor	106
Traffic Alerts	106
TFR Alerts	106
Sink Rate	108
500' AGL	109
Device Disconnect	109
Destination Weather Frequency	110
Pack	111
About the Design	111
Pack for a Flight	113
iPad	113
iPhone	114
Sync	116
About the Design	116
Using Sync	116
Cockpit Sharing	119
About the Design	119
Using Cockpit Sharing	119

Plates	120
About the Design	120
About Plate Binders	121
Creating a Binder	121
Managing Plates	121
Plate Controls	122
NOTAM Advisor for Approach Plates and Airport Diagrams	123
FBOs on Airport Diagrams	124
Printing Plates From a Binder	125
Ensuring Your Plates Don't Expire	125
Plates and Taxi Diagrams on a Map	126
About the Design	126
Displaying a Plate on a Map	127
Changing or Hiding the Plate on a Map	128
Adjusting Plate Transparency	128
Track Logs	129
About the Design	129
Enabling Track Logging	129
Start/Stop Logging	129
Track Log Listing	130
Synchronizing Track Logs to other Devices	131

Viewing a Track Log on an iPad or iPhone	132
Sharing Track Logs	
Exporting Track Logs to other Apps	
Viewing Track Logs in ForeFlight on the web	134
Documents	135
About the Design	
About Document Binders	
Creating a Binder	
Adding Documents from a Catalog	
Document Syncing	
Importing Documents from iTunes or other Apps	141
Viewing a Document	142
Searching in a Document	
Adding and Removing Bookmarks	144
Managing Documents in a Binder	144
Deleting Documents from your iPad	145
Ensuring Your Documents Don't Expire	145
Annotating Plates and PDF Documents	146
About the Design	
Types of Annotations	147
Adding and Editing Annotations	147

Choosing Annotation Color	148
Fill Color: Transparent or "No Fill"	149
Drawing/Ink	150
Text Box	150
Rectangle	151
Ellipse (Circle)	152
Line	152
Polygon	152
Polyline	153
Sticky-note	153
Undo/Redo	154
Selecting Multiple Annotations	154
Copying and Pasting an Annotation	154
Deleting Annotations	155
Imagery	156
About the Design	156
Selecting a Collection	157
NATIONAL - Featured	
CONUS WEATHER	159
GFS MOS	163
ADVISORIES	
WINDS ALOFT	164
ICING	164
TURBULENCE	

SATELLITE	
DOPPLER RADAR	
PILOT WEATHER REPORTS	
Viewing an Image	170
Using Favorite Images	170
Send To	170
File & Brief	171
About the Design	171
Before Creating a New Flight Plan	172
Creating a New Flight Plan	173
Choosing between FAA/Domestic and ICAO Flight Plans	174
Creating an FAA/Domestic Flight Plan	175
Creating an ICAO Flight Plan	175
Obtaining a Weather Briefing	176
Filing your Flight Plan (FAA/Domestic or ICAO)	176
Flight Plan Acknowledgment Notification	177
Flight Notifications	177
Amending or Canceling a LMFS Flight Plan	180
Activating or Closing a LMFS VFR Flight Plan	181
Close VFR Flight Plan "PUSH" Alerts	182
Amending or Canceling a DUATS Flight Plan	182
Managing Flight Plan Forms	182

Flight Alerts	
ForeFlight Briefing	184
About the Design	
Navigating the Briefing	
Translated Text vs Raw Text	
Briefing Sections	
Adverse Conditions	
Synopsis	
Current Weather	
Forecasts	
NOTAMs	
Miscellaneous	
ScratchPads	189
About the Design	
Open a ScratchPad	
ScratchPad Templates	190
Change Pen Size, Color, Opacity	190
Undo/Redo	191
Clear ScratchPad Content	191
Edit a ScratchPad Name	191
Reposition ScratchPad Thumbnails	192
Send a ScratchPad	192

Delete a ScratchPad	192
More	
Downloads	193
About the Design	193
Grouped Downloads	195
Select Data to Download	195
Downloading Data	197
Downloading in the Background	197
Keeping Current	198
Deleting Data Downloads	198
A Quick Tour of the Data Available for Download	199
Preflight Download Check	200
Troubleshooting Downloads	200
Accounts	202
About the Design	202
Viewing your Active Subscription	202
Purchasing or Renewing a Subscription in the United States	203
Purchasing or Renewing a Subscription in Canada	204
Signing In to your ForeFlight Account	204
Signing Out of your ForeFlight Account	204
Changing your Password or Email	205
Removing Devices from your Account	205
Providing a DUATS Account	205
Signing Out of your DUATS Account	

Aircraft	207
Create or Edit Aircraft Profile	207
Delete Aircraft Profile	208
Logbook	209
Checklist	210
Checklist Pro Migration	210
Setting Up Checklists	211
Editing Checklists	212
Using Checklists	213
Sharing Checklists	214
Weight & Balance	215
Settings	216
User Waypoints	222
Latitude/Longitude Formats	222
Sharing User Waypoints	223
Track Logs	224
Devices	225
Location Disabled / Troubleshooting GPS position issues	225
About	226
Apple Watch	227
Overview	227
Setting Up	227
Airports Page	229

Ins	struments Page	230
Tir	mer Page	231
ADS	-B Weather	232
٥v	verview	232
AD	DS-B Weather Products	232
Sta	atus Information	233
Ar	nimated ADS-B Radar	234
AD	DS-B Tower Location on Map	235
ADS	-B Traffic	236
٥v	/erview	236
IM	IPORTANT TRAFFIC NOTICE	236
Tra	affic Access in ForeFlight Mobile	236
Sta	atus Information	237
Tra	affic Symbols	237
Hi	de Distant Traffic Setting	239
Ov	wnship ADS-B Out Information	239
Tra	affic Alerts	240
Fore	Flight Connect	241
٥v	verview	241
Sti	ratus ADS-B Receivers	241
	Stratus Status Information	241

Stratus ESG (Stratus 1S/2/2S Only)	244
Stratus Replay (Stratus 1S/2/2S Only)	245
Stratus Flight Data Recorder	245
Recording a Track Log Using the Flight Data Recorder	246
Stratus Firmware Update	247
Garmin Connext	249
Pairing with Flight Stream	249
Using Connext	249
GPS and ADS-B from Connext	250
Sending a Route to Connext (requires Flight Stream 210 or 510)	252
Getting a Route from Connext (requires Flight Stream 210 or 510)	253
Calibrating Flight Stream 210 AHRS	254
Garmin GTX 345	255
Connecting to GTX 345	255
Using GTX 345	255
GPS and ADS-B from GTX 345	256
Calibrating the GTX 345 AHRS	256
Garmin GDL 39	258
Connecting to GDL 39	258
Using GDL 39	258
GPS and ADS-B from GDL 39	259
Calibrating GDL 39 3D AHRS	260
L-3 Lynx	261
Connecting to Lynx	261

Using Lynx	261
GPS and ADS-B from Lynx	
Avidyne IFD 550/540/440	
Connecting to IFD 540/440	
Getting a Route from IFD 550/540/440	
GPS from IFD 550/540/440	
Dynon SkyView	
Configuring SkyView WiFi	
Connecting ForeFlight and SkyView	
Sending a Route to SkyView	
Getting a Route from SkyView	
GPS and ARHS data from SkyView	
FreeFlight ADS-B	270
Connecting ForeFlight and FreeFlight RANGR	270
GPS and ADS-B data from FreeFlight RANGR	271
SiriusXM SXAR1	272
Connecting ForeFlight to the SXAR1	273
SXAR1 Available Weather Data	273
SXAR1 Status Information	275
SiriusXM Satellite Radio	276
Connecting a Bluetooth audio device to the SXAR1	277
SXAR1 Audio Controls	279
Baron Mobile Link/WXWorx	
Mobile Link Available Weather Data	

Mobile Link Status Information	
LogTen Integration	283
Flight Simulator Integration	284
Before Using a Flight Simulator with ForeFlight Mobile	
X-Plane	
Infinite Flight	
Prepar3D/Flight Simulator X	
Redbird	
ELITE	
AeroFly FS 2	
Frasca	
Sharing Flights	289
Twitter	
Email	
Miscellany	290
Radar Legends (when from Internet)	290
Rain - Radar Intensity (dBZ) vs. Color	291
Mixed Rain/Snow - Radar Intensity (dBZ) vs. Color	292
Snow - Radar Intensity (dBZ) vs. Color	293
Four-color Radar - Radar Intensity (dBZ) vs. Color	
Baron Mobile Link/WXWorx XM Radar Intensity (dBZ) vs. Color	

Radar Legends (when from Internet)	
PIREP Legend	
Enhanced Satellite	
Color IR Satellite	
KML User Map Shapes	
Learning More	
Pilot's Guide Change History	

# Introduction

This pilot's guide provides an overview of ForeFlight Mobile and its capabilities on the iPad. After reading this guide, you will have the ability to:

- Plan flights quickly
- Gather preflight intelligence information efficiently, and
- Use ForeFlight Mobile to best support your type of flying.

This guide presumes a basic level of proficiency with general iPad use and navigation. If you are new to Apple iOS devices, including the iPad, you will want to view the guided tours available on Apple's website at <u>www.apple.com/ipad/guided-tours/</u> as well as the iPad User Guide at <u>support.apple.com/manuals/</u>

### IPAD TIPS

There are a few handy iPad features you'll want to know about when using ForeFlight Mobile:

Multiple Orientations: The iPad supports portrait (tall) and landscape (wide) orientations. When you rotate an iPad from one orientation to another, an application typically alters its user interface to better take advantage of the space supplied.

Rotation Lock: Having the screen content rotate when you rotate the iPad isn't *always* a good thing. Rotation lock is helpful for preventing Terminal Procedure rotation or accidental rotation in turbulence. Fortunately, you can choose when the screen rotates and when it doesn't. There are a few methods for locking the orientation of content on your iPad's screen:

**Physical Switch:** A physical switch is located immediately above the volume buttons on the right side of some iPad models (models without the switch are the iPad Pro, iPad Mini 4, and iPad Air 2). When switched on, this prevents an application from changing its orientation as you change the orientation of the iPad. On some iPads, this switch instead functions as a "mute" switch. You can change the function of this back to a "lock" switch by using the iPad's **Settings** application. Tap *General*, and use the options in the *Use Side Switch to:* section. If this section is not displayed, you may need to update your iPad's version of the iOS operating system to enable this.

**iPad Soft-Lock:** Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to open the Control Center and find the rotation lock soft-button. This method is not available if you have the physical slider switch set to manage screen lock.

**ForeFlight Procedures Lock:** ForeFlight Mobile also provides a soft-lock switch on the **Procedures** viewer for more flexibility.

✤ Settings App: The iPad includes a special application called Settings. Within Settings, you can modify the way the iPad and its applications behave. ForeFlight-specific settings are addressed in the Settings section of this guide. All ForeFlight settings are available in the *More* view of ForeFlight Mobile as well.

Brightness Control: There is a brightness control accessible in iPad Settings app. It is also available for quick access in the Control Center by swiping-up from the bottom of the screen. This control is helpful for reducing brightness at night, or for dimming the screen during the day to preserve battery life.



For night use, if the iPad brightness control set to full dim (slider all the way to the left) doesn't dim the screen enough, use the brightness slider in ForeFlight Mobile in the **More** view or at the top of the <u>Maps Settings</u> menu to dim the screen further. The ForeFlight brightness slider integrates with the iPad's brightness slider, but allows for additional dimming beyond the lowest setting of the iPad's slider.

# Setting-up ForeFlight Mobile

First, download ForeFlight Mobile to your iPad, iPhone or iPod Touch from the Apple App store. See <u>www.foreflight.com/support/getting-started</u> for detailed instructions.

If this is your first time using ForeFlight Mobile on that device, you'll get a 30-day free trial of the data. The free trial includes all standard (not Pro) features, but you won't be able to "bulk download" charts and plates for different states.

You can purchase a subscription anytime at <u>www.foreflight.com/buy</u>.

**IMPORTANT:** If you have a subscription, follow these steps:

✤ Sign in: Your ForeFlight Mobile subscription is associated with your email address. This address does not have to be the same as the AppleID email address used in the Apple App store. Sign in on the More > Accounts tab (iPad) or the Menu > Account page (iPhone). See Signing in to your ForeFlight account.

Choose Chart Data to Download: See <u>Select Data to Download</u>. Tap on

**More > Downloads** (iPad) or **Menu > Downloads** (iPhone), then tap on the Country area(s) for which you have a subscription. For example if you have a US subscription, you would tap on United States. Choose the types of charts to download, then scroll down and select (tap) each state you want to download. Then tap the **<Downloads** button to go back to the Download status page, and tap the blue **Download** button to download the data.

Confirm Data Sync: If you have previously used ForeFlight Mobile 6.2 or later on any device(s), your User Waypoints, Favorites (Routes, Airports, Plates, Imagery) and Recents (Routes, Airports, Plates Imagery) will automatically be loaded after you sign-in. If you have lots of User Waypoints, Favorites or Recents, it may take a few minutes for the data to load.

If using an iPad: Tap on Documents > Catalog and choose any <u>documents</u> you would like to have in-flight. The Pilot's Guide is in the ForeFlight category; the FAA category has A/FD Supplementals, Legends, and FAR's and FAA Handbooks.

Before flying, be sure to complete the <u>pre-flight check</u>, including Downloading Data, and <u>use Pack</u> to confirm you have charts, METARs, NOTAMs, TFRs and Fuel prices covering your route.

# Airports

The *Airports* view displays airport information, frequencies, airport thumbnail diagrams, taxi diagrams, terminal procedures, service provider details, fuel prices and terminal area weather for over 20,000 airports worldwide.

Buttons located on the *Airports* view menu bar will help you find airports near the current airport, find airports near your current position, display the airport's location in the *Maps* view, and add or remove an airport to your *Favorites* list.

avorites Red	ents	_		— View o	n Man	Ne	ar-me -
avontes net	cincs			Viewo	map		
÷				7:50 AM	-		1
Favorites	Edit	©	Browse 📩	2	c	ર Search for airport, ta	ail, city
KORL: Executive 220° at 13 - 21 kts, 10 sm and sł 30.08 in Hg, 23°C (16°C dewpoir	57m (y cl nt)		KO Osh 43.9	SH: Wittman Reg kosh, Wisconsin, Unite 8°N/88.56°W	<b>ional</b> d States	Taxiway	s Nearby
0FL5: Lake Conway South 0FL5 is not reporting METARs			Flight rules	ise, set: 6:25 AM, 5:46	PM CST ATIS	125.9	
KMCO: Orlando Internatio 220° at 10 kts, 10 sm 30.09 in Hg. 24°C (15°C dewpoir	57m		Elevation Pattern altitude	808' MSL 1,808' MSL 🕥	Clearance Ground	121.9	
<b>KTYS: Mc Ghee Tyson</b> 350° at 14 - 21 kts, 2½ sm, Over Mist	38m cast	Freque	Procedures	ILS, GPS, VOR, LO.	Appr, Dep	110.5 127.0, 127.0 s Services A	/FD M
KOSH: Wittman Regional 230° at 4 kts, 10 sm and sky clea 30.48 in Hg, -21°C (-28°C dewpo	57m ar bint)		Airport		SAVED ILS O	or LOC Rwy 36	🚹 Map
CYWG: James Armstrong	50m		Departure		SAVED LOC	DME BC Rwy 18	📋 Map
170° at 2 kts, 15 sm, Broken 24, 30.37 in Hg, -27°C (-30°C dewpo	000 bint)		Arrival		SAVED NDB	Rwy 36	🚹 Map
KRIC: Richmond Internati 020° at 15 kts, ½ sm, Overcast 1 Low vis, snow, freezing fog	<mark>6m</mark> ,000		Approach			/ (GPS) Rwy 09 / (GPS) Rwy 18	🛄 Map
KCRX: Roscoe Turner 350° at 11 - 20 kts, 3 sm, Broker	<mark>20m</mark> n 1,900				SIVED RNA	/ (GPS) Rwy 27 / (GPS) Rwy 36	Map     Map     Map
					SVED VOR	Rwy 09	[1] Мар
		T		ł	. <b>L</b>	200	

#### **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

The *Airports* view is designed to fill the whole screen, reduce scrolling, and reduce the effort required for your eyes to lock on to important airport information. The colors selected reduce brightness, draw attention to the top half of the page, and help highlight critical information.

Airport Detail information is displayed on the top half of the Airports view. Refer to this portion of the view when preparing to taxi or when approaching an airport, as it contains elements such as the current flight rule; field elevation and pattern altitude; automated weather frequencies, and controller frequencies.

Additional information from one of the eight available lower views is displayed in the bottom half of the screen. There are views for airport related frequencies, current and forecast weather, runway details, terminal procedures, notices to airmen, airport services, the Airport/Facility Directory entry, and supplemental airport information.

#### FINDING AN AIRPORT USING SEARCH

*Search* is a useful method of finding information and creating flight plans within ForeFlight Mobile. Find airports by entering a search term in the search box, then tapping the 'Search' button displayed on the iPad's on-screen keyboard.

Valid search strings include Federal Aviation Administration airport identifiers (three-letter identifiers), International Civil



Aviation Organization identifiers (four-letter identifiers), city name, or keyword.

If ForeFlight doesn't find an instant match for the search term used, a list of close matches will appear.

Example Searches:

- KJFK immediately displays airport information for Kennedy Int'l.
- CDG immediately displays airport information for Charles De Gaulle.

Kennedy - produces a list of all airports with "kennedy" in the airport or city name.

 N35388 - returns aircraft information for the tail number N35388, including a link to FlightAware.com to track that aircraft's flights.

**KXIH** - shows the METAR and related info for the KXIH weather station

#### FINDING AN AIRPORT USING BROWSE

The **Browse** button on the *Airports* view menu bar allows browsing airport listings by country and region. Search is the preferred method for locating airports, but Browse is a helpful option for locating an airport

Browse

using the same State/City hierarchy you may already be familiar with from using Airport/Facilities Directories.

Tap the **Browse** button to display the *Airports* List. Use the 'A - Z scroller' on the right hand side of the Airports List to move forward and backwards quickly through the list. Tap the *All Countries* tab at the bottom of the airports list to view airports outside of the United States.

Pad 🗟		7:52 AN	4			<b>1</b> 84% I
Favorites	Edit 🕑	Search for airport,	tail, city			
KORL: Executive 220° at 13 - 21 kts, 10 sm and 30 08 in Hg. 23°C (16°C dewp)		Airports	<b>In Regio</b> n, United St	n <b>al</b> tates	Taxiwa	ays Nearby
0FL5: Lake Conway South 0FL5 is not reporting METARs	A		A M, 5:46 PN	I CST ATIS	Comme	ents FBOs
<ul> <li>KMCO: Orlando Internatio</li> <li>220° at 10 kts, 10 sm</li> <li>30.09 in Hg. 24°C (15°C dawn</li> </ul>	Arizona		Г Н <b>Э</b>	Clearance Ground	 121.9	
• KTYS: Mc Ghee Tyson 350° at 14 - 21 kts, 2½ sm, Ov	Arkansas C		L DR, LO	Tower Appr, Dep	118.5 127.0, 127.0	A/ED Maria
KOSH: Wittman Regional 230° at 4 kts, 10 sm and sky c 30 48 in Hg -21°C (-28°C dev	California Colorado		R >	NOT ILS or I	LOC Rwy 36	( <sup>1</sup> Мар
<ul> <li>CYWG: James Armstrong 170° at 2 kts, 15 sm, Broken 2 30.37 in Hg27°C (-30°C dew</li> </ul>	Connecticut D		×	SAVED LOC/D	ME BC Rwy 18 wy 36	① Map ① Map
<ul> <li>KRIC: Richmond Internati 020° at 15 kts, ½ sm, Overcast Low vis, snow, freezing fog</li> </ul>	USA 1,000	All Countries	· · ·	SAVED RNAV (	GPS) Rwy 09 GPS) Rwy 18	[ <sup>†</sup> ] Map [ <sup>†</sup> ] Map
<ul> <li>KCRX: Roscoe Turner</li> <li>350° at 11 - 20 kts, 3 sm, Broke</li> <li>Light snow</li> </ul>	21m en 1,900			NOT RNAV (	GPS) Rwy 27 GPS) Rwy 36	(Î) Map (Î) Map
ý M	LT Distance		ß		wy 09 La	Map

### **FAVORITE AIRPORTS LIST**

Use the Favorites list to store frequently visited airports, area airports, and airports for upcoming flights. Having a nicely populated list of favorite airports makes scanning airport conditions a snap.

While viewing an airport, tap the single star button on the Airport view menu bar to add the airport to your Favorites list. Tap the button a second time to remove the airport from your Favorites list.

When in landscape mode, the Favorites List is displayed on the left side of the screen. When the iPad is in portrait mode, tap the double-star button on the

Airports View menu bar to display the Favorites list. While the Favorites list is visible, tap any airport listed to display that airport's full information.

Tap the Edit button in the top-right corner of the Favorites list to reorder or remove airports. Reorder an airport by touch-holding on the stacked lines to the right of the airport, then sliding it up or down in the list. Remove an airport by tapping the red circle to the left of the airport and tapping the Delete button that appears. Tap Done to exit Edit mode.

Airports can also be deleted outside of Edit mode by swiping left across the airport to reveal the Delete button.

Each airport in the Favorites list displays the most recent weather information for the airport (if available).

Information displayed includes the current flight rule, observation age, wind speed and direction, ceiling, barometric

pressure, temperature, and dew point. Weather warnings (e.g., fog, thunderstorms, cumulonimbus clouds, lightning, mist) - are displayed and highlighted in red when present. ForeFlight Mobile automatically checks for updated weather observations every minute. If a more current observation is available, it is downloaded immediately and the display is updated.





 $\star$ 

ForeFlight uses the following convention for conveying the airport's current Flight Category:

Green	VFR
Blue	MVFR
Red	IFR
Magenta	LIFR

## **RECENT AIRPORTS LIST**

Tap the history button to display the Recents list. The Recents list displays the last twenty airports viewed in the order they were viewed.

⊡

To remove airports from the Recents list, there are two methods available: *clear* and *swipe-to-delete*. Tap the **Clear** button to remove *all* airports from the list. To remove a single entry from the Recents list use the standard Apple 'swipe-to-delete' function: swipe your finger across the airport, then tap the red "Delete" button.

### **FAVORITE AND RECENT AIRPORT SYNC**

Changes to your Favorite and Recent airports, including adding, removing and changing the order of Airports, are automatically synchronized to each device that is signed-in to your ForeFlight Mobile account. For more information, see the <u>Sync chapter</u>.

#### VIEWING AIRPORT WEATHER

Current Flight Category and a summary of weather (METAR) are shown for each airport on the <u>Favorite Airports</u> list. Tap the "Weather" tab to view detailed weather data for the selected airport, including METAR, TAFs, Model Output Statistics (MOS) forecasts, the Forecast Discussion for that area (US only), and Winds and Temperatures aloft with calculated difference from ISA (International Standard Atmosphere). Scroll down to see future forecasted TAFs and Winds Aloft.

iPad 🕈	5:00 PM	<b>1</b> * 49% 🗩
Favorites Edit	🕑 Browse ★ 🧟	Q Search for airport, tail, city
<ul> <li>KSUS: Spirit Of St. Louis 6m 463° MSL, CTAF 124.75, Tower 124.75 Winds calm, 10 sm 30.16 in Hg, 8°C (1°C dewpoint)</li> </ul>	KCNO: Chino Chino, California, US 33.97°N/117.64°W Sunrise, set: 6:31 AM, 4:43 PM 1	Taxiways     Nearby       PST     Comments
<ul> <li>KIAH: George Bush Interc 7m</li> <li>96' MSL, Tower 135.15, Tower 120.7</li> <li>110° at 6 kts, 10 sm</li> <li>30.25 in Hg, 14°C (2°C dewpoint)</li> </ul>	Flight category     VFR       Elevation     650' MSL       Pattern altitude     1,400' MSL	ATIS         125.85           Clearance            Ground         121.6
• KLAX: Los Angeles Intern 7m 127' MSL, Tower 133.9, Tower 119.8, 260° at 9 kts, 10 sm 29.91 in Hg, 22°C (11°C dewpoint)	Fuel     100LL, Jet A       Procedures     ILS, GPS, VOR, LO       Frequencies     Weather     Runways     Procedure	Tower         118.5           Appr, Dep         135.4, 135.4           s         NOTAMs         Services         A/FD         More
<ul> <li>KMSP: Minneapolis-St. P 7m 841' MSL, Tower 126.7, Tower 123.6 290° at 7 kts, 10 sm 30.08 in Hg, 4°C (-2°C dewpoint)</li> </ul>	METAR	VFR 7m ago     KCNO 232253Z 23011KT 10SM FEW200 26/01     A020 EMM 402 SI B105 T02510005
• KORD: Chicago O'hare Int 9m 680' MSL, Tower 124.125, Tower 126 260° at 7 kts, 10 sm	MOS >	Time 4:53 PM CST
30.06 in Hg, 1°C (-3°C dewpoint)	Forecast Discussion	Visibility 10 sm
<ul> <li>KSFO: San Francisco Inte 64m</li> <li>13' MSL, Tower 120.5</li> </ul>	Winds Aloft	Clouds (AGL) Few 20,000'
290° at 12 kts, 10 sm 29.92 in Hg, 14°C (9°C dewpoint)		Temperature 26°C (78°F)
84R: Smithville Crawford Municipal		Dewpoint 1°C (33°F)
Airports Maps	Plates Documents Imagery F	Altimator 20.01 in Ha ile & Brief ScratchPads More

The forecast Temperatures Aloft at different altitudes are colored based on temperature range:

**Grey** Above +2° C

Magenta From +2° C down to -25° C

Tan Below -26° C

## MODEL OUTPUT STATISTICS (MOS) FORECASTS

Model Output Statistics (MOS) forecasts are derived from the output of numerical weather prediction models. An automated process developed by research meteorologists at NOAA, MOS takes the "raw" model forecast and uses a statistical approach to produce an objective site-specific forecast. For most stations, MOS forecasts are updated hourly for the first 24 hours, then updated every six hours from 25 hours to 3 days in the future. The new forecast is ordinarily available at 30 minutes past the hour.

#### IMPORTANT: MOS should ONLY be used as a supplemental product for enhanced situational awareness and is not meant as a substitute for official NWS forecasts.

While TAFs provide the official forecast for over 660 civilian airports throughout the US and its territories, MOS provides weather guidance for over 2000 airports including some military air bases.

ð		45	30 PM	<u> </u>		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	iPad 🗇			4:	32 PM		, <u> </u>	≠ ≑ 100%
③ Browse ★	2		Q	Search for ai	rport, tail, city	0	* ©	Browse	* &		Q	Search for a	iirport, tail, cit	У
KMIA: M Miami, Flor	<b>Aiami Inte</b> rida, US	ernational			Taxiways	Nearby	×	KN Min	AIC: Crystal neapolis, Minnesota,	US			Taxhways	Nearby
Sunrise, se	1.29 W R: 6:46 AM, 5:	29 PM EST			Comments	FBOs	3674	45.0 Sun	rise, set: 7:24 AM, 4:	36 PM CST			Comments	FBOs
Flight category VFR	r.		ATIS	133.675, 1	119.15		Flight o	sategory	VFR		ATIS	124.475		
Elevation 8' M	ISL		Clearance	120.35, 13	35.35		Elevati	on	869' MSL		Clearance			
Pattern altitude 800'	MSL 🕥		Ground	127.5, 121	1.8		Patterr	1 altitude	1,869' MSL		Ground	121.6		
Fuel Jet /	A, 100		Tower	118.3, 123	3.9		Fuel		100LL, Jet A		Tower	120.7		
Procedures ILS,	GPS, LOC, I	RNAV	Appr, Dep	Multiple			Proced	lures	GPS, VOR, RNA	v	Appr, Dep	126.5, 12	.6.5	
uencies Weather	Runways	Procedures	NOTAMs	Services	A/FD	More	Frequencies	Weath	er Runways	Procedures	NOTAMs	Services	A/FD	More
						10								8
METAR		>	KMIA MOS		1h 30m ag	0		METAR		>	KMIC MOS		1h 32m a	go
TAF		5	5:00 PM CST					TAF		5	7:00 AM CST TOM	IORROW		
145			•	VFR				IAu			•	VFR		
MOS		>	Winds	070° at 11 -	- 18 kts			MOS		>	Winds	160° at 10	- 16 kts	
Forecast Disc	ursion	5	Visibility	more than (	6 sm			Enrecas	+ Discussion	5	Visibility	more than	6 sm	
Polecast sist	0551011	0	Clouds (AGL)	Overcast 4	,000'			Forecas	( Discussion	0	Clouds (AGL)	Overcast 4	\$,000'	
Winds Aloft		×	Expires	s 5:00 AM CST Tomorrow		3		Winds Aloft		×	Expires	s 10:00 AM CST		
			5:00 AM CST TOM	AORROW								Iomorrow		_
				VFR							10:00 AM CST TO	MORROW		
			Winds	080° at 11	- 22 kts						•	Marginal V	/FR	
			Visibility	more than I	6 sm						Winds	190° at 10	- 16 kts	
			Cloude (ACL)	Broken 0.0	001						Visibility	more than	6 sm	
			Ciouds (AGL)	Broken S,u	10.						Clouds (AGL)	Overcast 2	2,500'	
			Expires	10:00 AM C Tomorrow	ST						Expires	2:00 PM C	ST Tomorrov	e -
			10:00 AM CST TO	MORROW							2:00 PM CST TON	IORROW		
				VFR								VFR		
						_								4

MOS builds on the original forecast model by taking into account an historical record of observations at forecast points (such as airports), removes any known systematic model biases, and quantifies any uncertainty (like precipitation or thunderstorm chances) into probabilistic forecasts. MOS also transforms the model

data into sensible weather elements basic to aviation such as sky cover, ceiling height, visibility, wind speed and direction, the probability of precipitation, and the precipitation type.

MOS is a point forecast similar to a TAF. That is, MOS is valid at the station (airport) and should not be used as zone or area forecast. Pilots should use MOS in a similar way they may use a TAF, keeping in mind that TAFs are constructed by highly trained meteorologists and will ordinarily be more accurate than a MOS forecast for the same airport. Although MOS cannot be used as a forecast for dispatch to the airport or for IFR alternate requirements as required by FAA regulations (use TAFs and the area forecast (FA) for this purpose) they are useful for getting a picture of likely weather at airports without a TAF, and for getting a more recently updated forecast for airports that do have a TAF, since MOS are updated hourly.

The use of "Nearest MOS" is provided strictly for convenience. Keep in mind that a MOS forecast for an airport that is 20 miles away, for example, may not be representative of the forecast for the intended airport.

Despite its advantages, the MOS has some important limitations vs. TAFs:

- MOS is only available for US airports and some airports in US territories.
- MOS forecasts are never amended.
- MOS does not predict temporary conditions.
- MOS cannot forecast multiple cloud layers.
- MOS does not predict specific cloud layers above 12,000' AGL.
- MOS cannot forecast weather in the terminal area's vicinity (e.g., showers, fog).

MOS cannot forecast precipitation intensity and cannot distinguish between rain and drizzle.

MOS cannot distinguish between freezing rain, freezing drizzle and ice pellets. so if any is present, it just says "Freezing Precipitation."

MOS cannot predict variable winds.

✤ MOS cannot forecast non-convective low level wind shear (LLWS) or no significant weather (NSW).

#### **RUNWAY WINDS**

Tap on the Runways tab to view the preferred runway based winds reported in the last METAR received by ForeFlight Mobile. Headwinds are indicated by a green arrow and tailwinds by a red arrow in the first column. The first column assumes the runway heading is straight up & down, and the direction of the arrow reflects the relative direction of the winds when flying that runway heading.

The magnitude and direction of the crosswind are shown next to the grey arrow in the middle column. The far right column shows the magnitude of headwind or tailwind.

Remember that Runway heading is listed in Magnetic, while Wind direction is True. ForeFlight automatically applies the current Magnetic Variation when calculating the wind components. You can see the Magnetic Variation on the Airports page "More" sub-tab, under Features.

In this example, the most recently received METAR for KPMP reports the winds are from 140° at 9 knots. This means that the wind on Runway 10 is a headwind from the right: the resulting right crosswind component is 6 knots and the headwind component is 7 knots.

Tap on each runway in turn to view the expected headwind and crosswind components for that runway.



Current

### **VIEWING A PROCEDURE**

Terminal Procedures include Standard Terminal Arrival Routes (STARs), Departure Procedures (DPs), and approach plates. These are all accessible from the *Airports* view. Use the search or browse methods of finding an airport, then tap the **Procedures** tab located on the segmented menu bar in the middle of the *Airports* view. Depending on the procedures available for this airport, several types of procedures may be displayed according to type (e.g., Arrival, Departure, Approach). Takeoff minimums and alternate minimums can be found in the Departure and Arrival tabs, respectively. Custom procedures can be added using ForeFlight Mobile's *Bring Your Own Plates* feature. For information about using BYOP, see: www.foreflight.com/support/byop

Procedures are organized by their type in order to reduce scrolling. Procedures are saved to the device in one of two ways:

✤ Downloads View (bulk downloading procedures): Using the Downloads view allows bulk downloading of procedures for one or more regions for access when offline. This is the preferred and most efficient method for ensuring you'll have the procedures you need, whether or not you're online when it's time to view them.

✤ On-demand (downloading procedures one at a time): If you have not previously downloaded a procedure, tap a procedure name to download it immediately. This download method requires an Internet connection and thus will be unavailable while in flight. For this reason, ForeFlight recommends either using the bulk download functionality described above, or using this on-demand method while on the ground to ensure you'll always have the procedures you need while in flight.

Procedures are marked as *Saved* or *Not Saved*. Procedures marked *Saved (in green)* are stored locally on your iPad and are available when offline. Procedures marked *Not Saved* are **NOT stored** on your iPad and must be downloaded by viewing them or by using the Downloads view to download that region's terminal procedures in bulk.

Airport	>	SAVED ILS or LOC Rwy 36	📋 Map
Departure	>	SAVED LOC/DME BC Rwy 18	[ <sup>†</sup> ] Мар
Arrival		SAVED NDB Rwy 36	门 Мар
	>	SAVED RNAV (GPS) Rwy 09	门 Мар
Approach	>	SAVED RNAV (GPS) Rwy 18	门 Мар

From the **Procedures** tab, touch a procedure's name to display the ForeFlight procedure viewer. The procedure viewer includes buttons for: accessing a list of recently viewed procedures, <u>sending a plate to the Map</u> (if you have a Pro or Pro Plus subscription) printing a procedure, adding a procedure to your current Plates binder, and locking the procedure.

ForeFlight Mobile's **Lock** button disables touch interaction (zooming and scrolling) with the terminal procedure viewer, which minimizes the risk of accidental closure when in turbulence. It also disables the automatic rotation that would normally occur when the iPad is turned. The lock button can also, optionally, disable all buttons on the screen, including those that change views. That feature is configured in Settings.

Multi-page procedures can be viewed be sliding pages left or right with a single finger.

To print the plate, tap the **Send To** button in the upper toolbar and choose "Printer." An AirPrint capable printer is required. For more information about this requirement, see:

#### support.apple.com/kb/HT4356

Tap the **Rotate** button in the upper toolbar to rotate the plate clockwise 90 degrees per tap.

**Note**: Procedures are also available directly from the <u>*Plates*</u> view.

#### SWIPE TO CHANGE PLATES

When viewing a plate from the Airports page or the Plates page (including in a binder) you can quickly change between plates by **swiping three fingers** from Right to Left (or Left to Right).

When viewing plates at an Airport, swiping from Right to Left with three fingers will display the next Procedure in that airport's list and swiping from Left to Right will display the previous Procedure in that airport's list.

When viewing plates in a binder on the Plates page, swiping from Right to Left with three fingers will display the next Procedure in the binder and swiping from Left to Right will display the previous Procedure in the binder.

In either case the lists do not "wrap around" so when you get to the end of the list, additional swipes in the same direction will not take you to the end (or beginning) of the list or binder.

**IMPORTANT:** The "Zoom" Accessibility option (in Apple Settings, General, Accessibility) must be OFF for plate swiping to work. If the "Zoom" Accessibility feature is ON, swiping with three fingers will not change between plates.



NOTE: Displaying the Instrument Panel and aircraft position on a Plate requires a ForeFlight Pro or Pro Plus subscription. Basic and Basic Plus subscriptions do not show the Instrument Panel on the Plates page.

### USING GEO-REFERENCED PROCEDURES

Geo-referencing is an optional feature that requires a ForeFlight Pro or Pro Plus subscription. Go to <u>www.foreflight.com/buy</u> or the *Accounts* view to learn how to purchase or upgrade your subscription.

Most instrument procedures can be geo-referenced. This allows ForeFlight Mobile to display the aircraft's position on the procedure.

Only approach plates and taxi diagrams are geo-referenced; STARs/DPs are not drawn to scale and so cannot be geo-referenced. But using the "Procedure" button on the NavLog you can add the points on the SID/STAR to your route.

When a geo-referenced procedure is displayed, a blue square is drawn around the geo-referenced area. This is the only area of the plate in which your aircraft will be shown. Note that some plates are only drawn to-scale in the center portion - if your aircraft's location is shown outside that area it is positioned based on the scale of the center area and must *only* be compared to elements within that center area.

Until GPS data senses movement and provides a track over the ground, position is indicated using a small blue dot. Once your aircraft starts moving, the aircraft icon selected in ForeFlight Mobile settings is shown. Much like the *Maps* view, the aircraft speed, track, etc. is displayed at the bottom of the view. Tap an item in the Instrument Panel to change it. Geo-referenced approach plates and taxi diagrams can now also be displayed on the Map page, see the <u>Plates on a Map</u> section.





#### **FBO INFORMATION**

To access a list of Fixed Based Operators providing pilot services at an airport, tap the **FBOs** button. FBO details displayed include hours of operation, fuel prices, location on field, fuel availability, comments, contact numbers and frequencies, and any additional services provided. ForeFlight includes FBO details for thousands of airports worldwide.

The location of FBOs that sell fuel can also be shown directly on the Airport Diagram.



#### **Fuel prices**

Fuel price data is provided for thousands of FBOs. This price data is not guaranteed, so it is important to verify the price information with the FBO when complete accuracy is required. The price data does not differentiate between cash or credit pricing, nor will it reflect any discounts that may be available.



Fuel price data updates can be submitted within the application. Tap the "Update Fuel Prices" button when viewing an FBO's details. When submitting price data, leave unknown prices blank. Blank values will be ignored when the prices are updated on the ForeFlight system.

#### Comments

User-provided comments are available for FBOs and airports. View FBO comments by tapping the Comments button just under the fuel price information. Once you access comments, they are saved to your device so you'll be able to view them again later - even when you are offline.

To add a comment, tap the "Add Comment" button. Comments are moderated by ForeFlight and will appear for all users to see after they are reviewed.

# AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY (A/FD) OR CANADA FLIGHT SUPPLEMENT (CFS)

For additional airport information like pilot-controlled lighting procedures, parachute jumping activities, etc., sometimes there's just no better place than a good old-fashioned Airport/Facility Directory (or the Canada Flight Supplement).



Each airport's A/FD entry is available from the A/FD tab (or CFS tab for Canadian

airports) - just as you'd see it in the familiar green-covered printed version. If the entry has multiple pages you can single-finger swipe to the left or right to change pages. A single-tap on the A/FD page will display the "1 of n" at the bottom of the page, where n is the number of pages relating to that airport.
## **AIRPORT AND AIRCRAFT FLIGHT TRACKING**

Flight tracking data is provided by FlightAware.com, and is available only while connected to the Internet. On the Airports page, tap on the **More** tab then choose **Flight Tracking**. Tap Scheduled Arrivals, Scheduled Departures or Enroute to open Safari and show a list of aircraft scheduled to arrive or depart, or that are enroute to the airport.

		10:	26 AM			85% 💷)
Browse	* &		(	Q Search for a	airport, tail, c	ity O
House 29.5 Sunr	XH: Houston-S ston, Texas, United 1°N/95.48°W rise, set: 6:44 AM, 6	Gouthwest States :22 PM CST			Taxiways Comments	Nearby FBOs
ght rules	VFR		AWOS-3	123.625		
evation	68' MSL		Clearance	120.8		
Pattern altitude 1,068' MSL 📀			UNICOM	123.0		
el	100LL, Jet A		CTAF	123.0		
ocedures	GPS, LOC, RNA	V	Appr, Dep	123.8, 123	3.8	
es Weathe	er Runways	Procedures	NOTAMs	Services	A/FD	More
<u>.</u>						
Operatin	g Hours	>	Scheduled Ar	rivals		e
Contacts		>	Scheduled De	epartures		¢
0			Enroute			¢
Cycle		>				
Features		>				
ก้านสายสารสารสา						
	Browse KA Hou 29.5 Sum dht rules vvation ttern altitude el bocedures Weather Contacts Cycle Features	Browse   ★   ▲     KAXH: Houston-S   Houston, Texas, United 29.51°N/95.48°W     Sunrise, set: 6.44 AM, 6     ght rules   VFR     vation   68' MSL     ttern altitude   1,068' MSL     el   100LL, Jet A     bocedures   GPS, LOC, RNAP     es   Weather     Runways     Coperating Hours     Contacts     Cycle     Features	Browse   Image: Constraint of the second s	Browse   Image: Constraint of the second s	10:28 AM     P Browse   ★   ▲   Q. Search for a     KAXH: Houston-Southwest Houston, Texas, United States 29.51*N/95.48*W Sunrise, set: 6:44 AM, 6:22 PM CST   AWOS-3   123.625     ght rules   VFR   AWOS-3   123.625     wation   68' MSL   Clearance   120.8     ttern altitude   1,068' MSL   UNICOM   123.0     el   100LL, Jet A   CTAF   123.0     bccedures   GPS, LOC, RNAV   Appr, Dep   123.8, 12:     ss   Weather   Runways   Procedures   NOTAMs   Services     Operating Hours   >   Scheduled Arrivals   Scheduled Departures   Enroute     Cycle   >   >   Features   >   For the sectors	10:28 AM     Prowse   ★   ▲   Q. Search for airport, tail, of Q. Search for Airport, tail, ta

To track an individual aircraft, type an aircraft Tail-number in the Search box, then tap the "Track" button in the aircraft registration information pop-up.

# Maps

## **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

The Maps view is the place to visualize airspace, weather, terrain and other factors that may affect your route. The maps view is also the place to chart your progress during a flight. The maps themselves take center stage with supporting data surrounding them.



## PINCH, ZOOM, AND PAN

Each map in the Maps view supports the standard iPad gestures for zooming and panning. Drag your finger on the map to slide it to a new region. Use two fingers in a pinch or expand gesture to change the zoom scale of the map. You can also double tap the map to zoom in one level or tap once with two fingers at the same time to zoom out one level. Anytime you display a new route on the map the zoom level and region shown will auto-adjust to bring your route into view.

Tap the Zoom to Route button in the lower left of the Maps screen to automatically zoom the map in or out to show the entire Route.



## CHANGING MAPS / MAP OVERLAY

A variety of map types are available. To change which map is displayed, tap the Map mode button at the top left of the view. Tap a map name to select it and update the map.

The current zoom and location will not change when you change maps.

If you have entered a route of flight, the route line is always displayed no matter which map type you're viewing.

Each map is geo-referenced and seamless. This means that you can view your current location on the map and do not need to change maps to view a new region - simply drag with your finger.

Radar or Satellite data can be overlaid on any base map selection (such as VFR charts). Additionally, any marker or shape overlay can be selected for viewing. Examples of these are TFRs or Visibility. Only one marker-type can be selected at once. To de-select a overlay and hide it, tap it in the menu.

#### Map types:

ForeFlight Map - The permanent, customizable base map that all other maps and layers are overlaid on, which shows political boundaries and geographic features. See <u>Maps</u> <u>Settings</u> for more information.



✤ Aeronautical - ForeFlight's Global Aeronautical Maps. These display dynamic and customizable aeronautical data , such as airports, airspace, ARTCCs, VORs, waypoints, and more. See <u>Global Aeronautical Maps</u> for more information.

Street Map - Detailed street map. This map can only be used when connected to the Internet. However, views you display while connected to the Internet are cached in memory and may be available in-flight, provided the cache is not cleared or filled to capacity.

✤ Aerial Map - Satellite image map including street labels. This map can only be used when connected to the Internet. However, views you display while connected to the Internet are cached in memory and may be available in-flight, provided the cache is not cleared or filled to capacity.

✤ U.S. VFR Sectional - Terminal Area Charts (TACs) are automatically displayed when a VFR sectional is zoomed in to major cities containing a TAC inset.

• U.S. IFR Enroute - low or high.

Canada VNC - VFR Terminal Area Charts (VTAs) are automatically displayed when a VNC is zoomed in to major cities containing a VTA inset. Requires ForeFlight Canada subscription.

• Canada IFR Enroute - low or high. Requires ForeFlight Canada subscription.

• U.S. IFR (planning) - IFR planning chart covering contiguous 48 states.

World Aeronautical - VFR chart covering the contiguous 48 states + Alaska. WAC charts covering northern Mexico (extending south to the tip of Baja) and the northern Caribbean (extending south to Guadeloupe island) can also be downloaded. Tap More > Downloads > Caribbean, Mexico, Central America, then turn World Aeronautical Charts to ON.

• U.S. IFR (ocean) - Atlantic and Pacific ocean IFR charts.

Carib/Mexico IFR - IFR Low or High charts covering Mexico and the Caribbean.
Tap More > Downloads > Canada, Mexico, Central America, then turn IFR Low
Charts and/or IFR High Charts to ON.

✤ U.S. Helicopter - Three-color charts showing aeronautical information useful to helicopter pilots navigating in 9 major metro areas with heavy helicopter activity. Includes helicopter routes, heliports, navaids and obstructions. Can be selected with any U.S. base map.

Heli Gulf VFR - U.S. VFR Sectional-style chart of the Gulf of Mexico (GOM) showing airspace, GOM blocks, airspace, and oil rig and weather station locations. Can be selected with any U.S. base map.

✤ Heli Gulf IFR - IFR style chart of the Gulf of Mexico (GOM) showing GOM blocks, GPS waypoints, airspace and weather station locations. Can be selected with any U.S. base map.

#### Map overlays:

#### Map overlays IMPORTANT NOTICE:

An active Internet connection or in-flight weather receiver such as a Stratus 2 ADS-B or Baron Mobile Link/XM are required to display timely map overlay information.

**Immediately before your flight:** While still connected to the Internet, use the <u>Pack</u> feature to ensure all relevant TFR and weather data is downloaded. Note the timestamp in the upper-left corner of the Maps page, indicating the time when the overlay data was received.

✤ Radar (Composite) - Radar for the US and Canada showing a composite of multiple angles of radar scan.

✤ Radar (Lowest Tilt) - Radar for the US and Canada showing only the lowest angle (tilt) radar scan, useful for determining where precipitation is actually reaching the ground.

Both radar layers can be animated by tapping the "play" button in the lower left corner of the map. The radar layers check for updates every three minutes. For more details, see the <u>Radar Legend</u>, and radar color vs. intensity legends for <u>Rain</u>, <u>Mixed</u> <u>Rain/Snow</u>, and <u>Snow</u>.

Radar requires an active Internet connection or ADS-B "In" receiver or SiriusXM/ Baron Mobile Link in-flight weather receiver. Selecting Radar in-flight without one of these will display diagonal hashmarks with the message "Radar not Available" across the Map. Clear the hashmarks and message by de-selecting the Radar overlay using the Maps drop-down.



Enhanced Satellite - Visible- or infrared-derived (depending on time of day) grayscale satellite with color infrared highlights for high-altitude cloud tops.

Color IR Satellite - Infrared satellite colorized to depict the temperature of the cloud tops. Ground temperature depictions are masked out to show regions without clouds. Color-temperature scale is the same as used in the Infrared Satellite imagery.

Both satellite layers can be animated by tapping the "play" button in the lower left corner of the map. The satellite layers check for updates every three minutes, but new images are typically transmitted every 30 minutes.

Satellite requires an active Internet connection or Baron Mobile Link weather receiver (IR Satellite is not available with Baron Mobile Link). The Satellite overlay is not available with an ADS-B or SiriusXM weather receiver.

✤ Echo Tops (requires SXAR1) - Displays the height where ground-based radar detects reflectivities above 18 dBZ. Use the altitude slider on the right to filter out echo tops at lower altitudes. Covers CONUS plus Northern Mexico and Southern Canada.

Cloud Tops (requires SXAR1) - Displays cloud top height derived from satellite temperature sensors. Use the altitude slider on the right to filter out cloud tops at lower altitudes. Covers CONUS plus Northern Mexico and Southern Canada.

✤ Hazard Advisor - Terrain-based map, colored red or yellow based on terrain height relative to aircraft position (yellow for terrain between 1,000' and 100' below the aircraft, red for higher terrain). Also shows obstacles in local area within 1,000' of aircraft altitude. Available on iPad 2 and iPhone 4 (or newer) with a ForeFlight Pro or Pro Plus subscription.

Search & Rescue Grids: These map overlays are available when Search and Rescue is enabled in Settings. For more details see the Search and Rescue Supplement in Documents > Catalog > ForeFlight:

✤ CAP Grid - "Conventional" 15-minute quadrangle grid squares, in the format ORD385.

Cell CAP Grid - "new" grid based on 1 degree of latitude/longitude, in the format 40092AA.

 GARS Grid - Grid Area Reference System made up of 30-minute cells with 15-minute quadrants and 5-minute areas, in the format 175LX. Traffic (requires ADS-B) - When connected to an ADS-B receiver, the Traffic option is shown. When selected, ADS-B traffic is displayed on the map. TRAFFIC DISPLAY WILL BE LIMITED UNLESS YOUR AIRCRAFT IS EQUIPPED WITH ADS-B OUT. SEE <u>ADS-B TRAFFIC SECTION</u> FOR MORE DETAILS.

✤ TFRs - covers regions provided by FAA as well as 3rd party sources (Stadium TFRs). Tap a TFR shape to see more details. TFR shapes are shown in perform until 8 hours before the scheduled start time. Within 8 hours of the TFR being active, it is shown in red until the end of the TFR.

## **TFRs IMPORTANT NOTICE:**

Graphical TFR information is ONLY updated and displayed if you select the TFR Map overlay while connected to the Internet, or while using an in-flight weather receiver.

However if the FAA publishes a TFR without associated graphical shape information it may not be possible for ForeFlight Mobile to show the graphical TFR on the Maps page.

Therefore you should also check the Airports page, under NOTAMs > TFRs for airports along your route, and contact FSS or ATC to confirm that your route does not cross any such TFRs

**Immediately before your flight:** While still connected to the Internet, use the <u>Pack</u> feature to ensure all relevant TFR and weather data is downloaded. TFRs issued **after** you Pack will not be shown, unless you are using an ADS-B or XM in-flight weather receiver.

For limitations when using a Stratus ADS-B receiver or Baron Mobile Link XM weather receiver, please see the <u>Stratus ADS-B Weather</u> or <u>XM Weather chapters</u>.

AIR/SIGMET/CWAs - covers regions provided by FAA, as well as international

SIGMETs. The shapes are colored-coded based on type:

**Blue** for freezing level and icing conditions.

Orange for turbulence and high winds. Gray for IFR and mountain obscuration.

Yellow for convective outlooks.

**Red** for SIGMETs of all types.

**Light Blue** for Center Weather Advisories. These types can be selectively filtered from the map using the four buttons that appear at the bottom of the screen when the layer is selected.

Tap an AIR/SIGMET/CWA shape to display a pop-up listing all advisories at that location, then tap on one to see full details about the advisory, including the



highlighted lateral boundary (thick red border in the image at right); this is especially useful when multiple \*METs overlap in one place.

Weather Overlays - a variety of weather measurements can be displayed on the map: Flight Category, Winds Aloft, Dewpoint Spread, Temperature, Visibility, Surface Wind, Ceiling, Sky Coverage, PIREPs, and Lightning. The weather overlays are updated every five minutes when connected to the Internet. See <u>Weather</u> <u>Overlay Color Coding</u> for details of color coding for each type of overlay.

✤ Winds Aloft - Forecasted Winds Aloft, up to 6 hours ahead. To adjust the altitude of the displayed forecasted winds, touch on the altitude slider and move it up or down until your desired altitude is shown. You can select altitudes from 3000' to FL540 in 3000' increments.



Tap a winds barb to see the forecasted wind speed, direction and temperature at that altitude, and the "Valid at" time for that forecast.

Surface Winds - derived from METARs at Airports, shows wind speed and direction at those locations only. *See below for side-by-side comparison*.

Surface Wind Analysis - generated from an automated forecast model, shows forecast wind speed and direction at tens of thousands of evenly spaced points across the country. Good for viewing low-level circulations across a wide area.



Surface Winds

Sfc Wind Analysis

- **Obstacles** shows obstacle markers based on the FAA's USA data.
- User Waypoints all User Waypoints view are shown on the Map.

• Fuel prices - prices for 100LL or JetA fuel. Fuel prices are color coded by price in the region where the airport is located - less expensive prices are in green,

average in orange, most expensive in red. When searching for the best prices, **Zoom-in** to display more vendors' prices in a given area.

✤ KML User Map Shapes - display a custom shape overlay on the Map. Multiple KML files can be imported, but only one can be displayed at a time. See the <u>KML</u> <u>User Map Shapes</u> section for details about creating the files and importing them into the app.

NOTE: The radar map requires an Internet, ADS-B, or XM WX (SiriuXM SXAR1 or Baron Mobile Link) connection. The satellite map requires an Internet or XM WX (Baron Mobile Link only) connection. Weather maps require an Internet connection. Fuel price maps require an Internet connection the first time they are used. The **Downloads** view can be used to download Obstacles as well as World, IFR, and VFR charts for use when offline.

## **GLOBAL AERONAUTICAL MAPS**

ForeFlight Global Aeronautical Maps utilize a new kind of mapping technology which uses sets of digital aeronautical data to display information on the map. This differs from traditional VFR and IFR charts which are digital image files of charts, also known as "raster" charts. Building a map or chart overlay using pure digital data allows information to be manipulated and displayed in many useful and powerful ways.



The data used in the Aeronautical Maps come from the FAA, Nav Canada, Eurocontrol, and other official sources. Updates are delivered as part of the Airport and Nav Database updates, which are delivered every 28 days, or more often as needed.

Global Aeronautical Maps are available with the Basic Plus, Pro Plus, and Business Pro subscription plans, and are also available as an add-on for other plans.

The Aeronautical data can be displayed over either a "Light" or "Dark" color scheme, or pilots who like the traditional "World Map" from previous versions of the app can choose "Classic."

When viewing the Aeronautical data by itself, Terrain data can also be included on the map via a switch in <u>Maps Settings</u>.



The Aeronautical data can also be overlaid over any available chart or map type.

#### **Aeronautical Maps Features**

Continuous Zoom - Icons, shapes, and text labels smoothly fade in and out as the zoom level changes, in contrast to raster charts which have to re-render at certain zoom levels to maintain their clarity. ✤ Decluttering - The information shown on the map changes along with the zoom level, with large-scale features like ARTCC boundaries and major airports appearing when zoomed out, and small-scale features like waypoints, VORs, and smaller airports appearing as you zoom in. This prevents the map from becoming too cluttered with information, and ensures that the most relevant information at any zoom level is shown.

Always-Up Labels - Labels for airports, waypoints, and other map features always appear in the proper orientation, even when the rest of the map is upside down, as when flying south in "Track Up" mode.

• **Customizable Data** - The data shown on the map can be customized to the type of planning or flying you're doing. Airspaces can be turned on or off, airways can be set to either high or low IFR, and ARTCC borders, heliports, and private airports can be toggled on or off. See <u>Maps Settings</u> for more information.

✤ Adjustable Text Size - The text size of labels for every map element can be adjusted using a slider. See <u>Maps Settings</u> for more information.

Single Tap - When the Aeronautical layer is enabled, tapping on the icon for any map item will open that item's detail view, allowing you to bypass the taphold action and "Add to Route" popup that is normally required to see details about a map item.

Embedded Airport Diagrams - ForeFlight airport diagrams are directly integrated with the Aeronautical Maps, fading in as you zoom into an airport. The diagrams include labels for runways, taxiways, hold pads, and FBOs.

## **Aeronautical Maps Symbols**

The following symbols are shown on the Aeronautical Maps layer:

<b>\$</b>	Civil Airports <b>with</b> Services (with and without tower)	00	Civil Airports <b>without</b> Services (with and without tower)
	Military Airports (with and without tower)	RR	Private Airports (with and without tower)
<b>\$</b>	Seaplane Bases <b>with</b> Services (w/ and w/o tower)	<b>3</b>	Seaplane Bases <b>without</b> Services (w/ and w/o tower)
Э	Heliports (light map color scheme)	H	Heliports (dark map color scheme)
$\land$	Standard fix	<b></b>	RNAV fix
Ø	VOR Navaid	$\bigcirc$	VOR/DME Navaid
<b>\$</b>	VORTAC Navaid	$\odot$	NDB Navaid
Ø	NDB/DME Navaid	$\bigcirc$	FBO Location (on ForeFlight airport diagram)
	ARTCC Boundary	<u>, (, (, (, (, ()</u>	ADIZ
	Class B Airspace	110 SFC	Class B Altitude
	Class C Airspace	45 SFC	Class C Altitude
	Class D Airspace	645 <u>7</u>	Class D Altitude
	Class E surface area		Mode C
	TRSA		SATR Area
	CTRs		MOA/Alert/Training Airspace
	Caution/Warning/Danger Airspace		Prohibited/Restricted Airspace
	Other Airspace	—V553—	VOR Airways/Jetways
— <u>T244</u> —	RNAV Routes	<b>V163</b> (3,500 <sup>1</sup> )	Airway ID (MEA)

## **MAPS SETTINGS**

Tap the Maps **Settings** button next to the map selection button in the dark blue tool bar to show the following Map settings:

#### Screen Brightness

The brightness slider integrates with the iPad's brightness slider, but allows for even more dimming (see the <u>Settings</u> section for more info).

Invert Chart Colors - turn ON to invert black and white colors on charts for improved low-light viewing (does not affect Street or Aerial maps). This setting can also be independently enabled for Plates and Documents. NOTE: The Aeronautical map is not affected by Invert Chart Colors, so you may want to choose the Dark Map Theme (see below) for low-light viewing when no chart is selected.

#### **ForeFlight Map**

Map Theme - select the color theme of the base map.
Three options are available: Classic, Light, and Dark.

✤ Terrain - turn ON to overlay the global terrain map, which is colored based on terrain height data. Low

resolution data available worldwide, higher resolutions available for certain regions. Available on iPad 2 or iPhone 4 (or newer).

Place Labels - adds text labels that identify political and geographic features.

Aeronautical (when Aeronautical layer is selected)

• Airports - customize what airports are shown on the map by enabling or disabling heliports, private airports, and seaplane bases.

✤ Airspace - customize what airspace is shown on the map by enabling or disabling controlled airspace, SUA/MOA, TRSA, Class E, Mode C, and ADIZ.

• **Airways** - change the airways, waypoints, and VOR radials shown on the map. Three options are available: Off, Low, and High.

ARTCC/FIR - change the ARTCC frequency stamps shown on the map. Three options are available Off, Low, and High.



Slider for adjusting the text size of aeronautical elements on the map. The full range of the slider goes from 75% to 150% of normal text size. The slider does not affect place labels or text on other maps or charts.

#### Auto-Center Mode

Mode selector for auto-center/moving-map operation: North Up, Track Up Centered, Track Up Forward (see <u>Track Up</u> for additional information).

#### Map Overlays

✤ Hide Distant Traffic - turn ON to hide traffic beyond 15nm radius and +/-3,500' from your location/altitude (setting is only shown when connected to an ADS-B receiver; see <u>ADS-B Traffic</u>).

• **Route Labels** - turn *ON* to enable waypoint and airway labels on route lines.

• Extended Centerlines - turn ON to enable extended runway centerlines at airports in the current route. Centerlines extend 5 NM from runway end.

 Distance Rings - turn ON to enable three concentric rings around your aircraft (See <u>Distance Rings</u> for additional information).

• Glide Advisor - turn ON to enable the green Glide Advisor ring. Glide Advisor ring is hidden at GPS altitudes below 200' AGL.

✤ Glide Settings - select glide data to use for Glide Advisor, enter glide performance information (speed and glide ratio, assuming ratio is to 1, eg 8.0:1), and shortcuts to edit glide information for aircraft in the More > Aircraft menu.

Track Vector - turn ON to display a projected track vector ahead of your aircraft icon (see <u>Track Vector</u> for additional information).

Track Log Record Button - turn ON to display the "REC" button on the Maps view for recording ForeFlight <u>Track Logs</u>.

✤ Four-color Radar - turn ON to display radar in a low resolution, four-color scheme that complies with dBZ-to-color mapping standards defined by the Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics. See <u>Radar Legends</u> for more information.

✤ Map Touch Action - select what happens when you tap on multiple overlapping charts. "No action" displays charts seamlessly stitched together in the default order. Choose "Bring chart to front" and single-tap the chart to cycle through the charts that overlap at that point. Choose "Bring chart to front with legends" to also show the chart legend and border when tapping to cycle through the charts. See additional details in the Map Touch section below.

#### **Opacity Sliders**

Slider to change the opacity of radar, TFRs, and other weather overlays, and another to change the opacity of plates overlaid on the map (see <u>Plate on Maps</u> for additional information).

#### Devices

✤ Quick access to external device status info (see <u>ForeFlight Connect</u> for information on compatible devices).

## **MAP TOUCH**

Map Touch is an enhancement to the traditional seamlessly-stitched charts that allows each individual chart to also be displayed either as a "trimmed" version without legends or margins, or as a "collared" version that shows the unaltered chart with all legends and borders.



The Map Touch Action is selected using the Maps Settings menu, or in More > Settings.

Distance Rings	
Track Vector	
Track Log Record Button	
Map Touch Action	>

Settings	Map Touch Action	
No actio	n	
Bring ch	art to front	
Bring ch	art to front with legends	~

When **Bring chart to front** or **Bring chart to front with legends** is selected in Maps Settings, a single tap on a point where multiple charts overlap will cycle through the charts that overlap at that point. This is useful if there is information on one chart that is obscured by the seamless chart "cut" line. Additional single taps will bring each chart forward in turn.

#### Bring chart to front



**IMPORTANT:** Because not every chart is published at the same time, airspace or restricted areas may not be depicted the same on overlapping charts. Consult all applicable charts when planning a flight.

## **SMART AIRWAY LABELS**

When the route entered in the Route Editor includes one or more airways, dynamic labels appear along each airway segment with information about the segment, including the name of the airway, the segment's MEA, and the segment's MOCA, if it has one. These labels expand to fill available space between waypoints, adding more information as you zoom in.



Smart airway labels only appear when an airway is explicitly named in the Route Editor, meaning that one of the route "bubbles" is the airway's name. Building a route with the individual waypoints in an airway but without naming the airway itself will result in the airway labels not appearing.

Smart airway labels are tied to other route labels, and can be disabled by turning off Route Labels in <u>Maps Settings</u>.

## **AIRPORT POPUP**

The Airports popup allows you to quickly check the same information contained in the Airports view right on the Maps view.

When displaying the Aeronautical Map or a weather overlay on the Maps view, tap on an airport's icon to display the Airport popup. The **Info** filter shows airport information like runways, frequencies, approaches, etc... The **METAR**, **Forecast**, and **Winds** filters show weather information, and the **FBO** filter shows FBO information and fuel prices.



If a tappable overlay is not selected, tap-hold on the map near the airport's location. Tap **More**, and then **Details** to display the Airport popup.



# WEATHER OVERLAY COLOR CODING

Weather Overlay	Color coding			
	LIFR: Magenta. Ceiling less than 500' and/or visibility less than 1 mile.			
	IFR: Red. Ceiling 500' to less than 1,000' and/or visibility 1 to less than 3 miles.			
Flight Category	MVFR: Blue. Ceiling 1,000' to 3,000' and/or visibility 3 to 5 miles inclusive.			
	VFR: Green. Ceiling greater than 3,000' and visbility greater than 5 miles; includes sky clear.			
	Unknown: grey question-mark			
	Altitudes < 12,000'	Altitudes ≥ 12,000'		
	0-29 knots	0-69 knots		
	30-39 knots	70-89 knots		
Winds Aloft (wind barb color)	40-49 knots	90-109 knots		
(	50-59 knots	110-124 knots		
	60-69 knots	125-149 knots		
	≥70 knots	≥150 knots		
Surface Wind	Black: Peak <20 knots			
(wind barb color)	Orange: Peak 20-30 knots:			
	Red: Peak >30 knots:			

Wind Barb symbology	Wind direction is in "true" degrees depicted by a stem (line) pointed in the direction the winds are coming from. Barbs indicate speed in 5 knot increments and can be combined on the stem to show faster winds. Short barb = 5 kts; Long barb = 10 kts; Flag = 50 kts			
	Examples: OCalm			
	▲ 5 kts ▲ 15 kts ▲ 60 kts			
Dew Point Spread	4 0-4° C: Orange			
	5 ≥5° C: Green			
	<b>2</b> <3° C: Red			
Temperature	<b>3</b> 3-34° C: Green			
	35 ≥35° C: Orange			
	O <1 SM: Magenta			
Visibility (same as Fliaht	2 1-2 SM: Red			
Category colors)	<b>5</b> 3-5 SM: Blue			
	<b>6</b> >5 SM: Green			
	1 <500': Magenta			
Ceiling	<b>5</b> 500'-999': Red			
(same as Flight Category colors)	<b>10</b> 1000'-2999': Blue			
	<b>31</b> ≥3000': Green			

## ATTITUDE INDICATOR / SYNTHETIC VISION (IPAD ONLY)

Tap the Attitude Indicator/Synthetic Vision (SV) button at the top of the Maps page to view the Attitude Indicator display showing GPS altitude (MSL), GPS ground track, GPS ground speed and GPS calculated rate of climb (ft/min). If connected to a Stratus 2/2S or other AHRS-equipped external device, the display will also include AHRS-derived horizon (pitch & roll). However if using a GPS source that does not include an AHRS sensor, then attitude information (pitch, roll) is not displayed and the horizon will appear level regardless of your aircraft's attitude.

If you have a subscription that includes Synthetic Vision (SV), the display will also include a 3D depiction of the terrain ahead of you. Obstacles and Terrain are colored based on the relative altitude (tied to the Profile view altitude selection). By default, Obstacles or Terrain more than 1000' below you are colored green; within 1000' below your altitude are Yellow; and within 100' below to above your altitude are Red. The gridlines on the SV view are aligned North-South and East-West for easy orientation.



Attitude Indicator with GPS input but no SV subscription or AHRS input.



Attitude Indicator with AHRS input and SV subscription.

When the iPad is in Landscape orientation the AI/SV display is shown on the left side of the screen. When the iPad is in Portrait orientation the AI/SV display is shown at the top of the screen on the Maps page.

Tap the full-screen/half-screen button in the lower left corner of the screen to switch between split-screen and full-screen AI display in either landscape or portrait orientation.



## **IMPORTANT NOTICE: ATTITUDE INDICATOR DISPLAY**

THE FOREFLIGHT ATTITUDE INDICATOR / SYNTHETIC VISION (AI/SV) DISPLAY IS FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY. DO NOT USE THE FOREFLIGHT AI/SV DISPLAY AS A PRIMARY INSTRUMENT IN ANY PHASE OF FLIGHT.

THE FOREFLIGHT AI/SV DISPLAY SHOWS THE ATTITUDE OF THE AHRS-EQUIPPED EXTERNAL DEVICE. IF THE DEVICE IS NOT MOUNTED PROPERLY AND SECURELY IN THE AIRCRAFT, THE ATTITUDE SHOWN MAY NOT CORRESPOND TO THE AIRCRAFT'S ACTUAL ATTITUDE. The AI display will automatically begin dimming to a darker "night" mode beginning 20 minutes before local sunset and will be fully dimmed 20 minutes after sunset. 20 minutes before local sunrise the AI display will automatically begin brightening to "day" mode.



Red chevrons are shown on the AI/SV display if the nose-up or nose-down attitude approaches 30 degrees. The chevrons point in the direction of pitch recovery.



#### **Stratus 2/2S Positioning**

For accurate pitch & roll indications the Stratus 2/2S must be positioned in the aircraft with the long axis of the device aligned fore and aft with the aircraft centerline and with the LED lights facing towards the back of the airplane. The device does not need to be mounted exactly on the aircraft centerline, and can be mounted up to 90 degrees on edge for applications such as mounting to a side window using a suction cup.



#### Calibrate the AI/SV display

When using a Stratus 2/2S, the Attitude Indicator can be calibrated to straight and level by tapping the AHRS "data source" label (1) in the lower-left of the Attitude Indicator display. Tap the "Calibrate" button (2) on the pop-up window and then tap on the "Zero Pitch & Bank" button (3) to automatically set the current condition as level, or tap on any of the four Pitch & Bank arrows to adjust the pitch and roll in small increments. To save the calibration tap the "Save" button (4) in the upper right corner of the display. Tap the "Cancel" button (5) to cancel the calibration.



To calibrate the Attitude Indicator when using a Garmin Flight Stream 210, see <u>Calibrating Flight Stream 210 AHRS</u>. Currently the Attitude Indicator cannot be calibrated when using a Garmin GTX345 transponder for AHRS input.

In the event that AHRS or GPS data becomes unreliable, the affected instrument(s) will be X'd out until reliable data is received.



#### Synthetic Vision required downloads

To display Synthetic Vision terrain, you must first turn on the "High Resolution Terrain" switch in **More** > **Downloads** > **United States** (and/or **Canada** or **Caribbean, Mexico, Central America**), then tap the black **<Downloads** button to go back to the Download status page, and tap the blue "Download" button to download the High Resolution Terrain data, which includes the data for Synthetic Vision.

3:37 PM		🕇 🚯 84% 💷D+	
wnloads	United States	Clear	
agrams an	d A/FD		
minal Procedu	ires		3:38 PM
Charts			Downloa
w Charts			REQUIRED DOWNLOADS
h Charts			Worldwide Terrain
lanning / Oc	cean Charts	$\bigcirc$	HIGH RESOLUTION TERRAIN
copter Charts	5		United States: Contiguous
Resolution <sup>-</sup>	Ferrain		Updated Jul 8, 2016
orld Aeronautic	al Charts	$(\Box)$	

## FINDING AN AIRPORT OR NAVIGATION AID USING SEARCH

To quickly center the map on an airport, navigation aid, or waypoint, tap the *search box* in the top right of the view. Type the location's identifier, and tap the **Search** button on the keyboard.

You can search by identifier, latitude/longitude, or bearing and distance from a waypoint.

The waypoint will be shown with a marker. Typing in a waypoint will not clear any route showing on the Maps view.

To remove the animated waypoint marker, simply tap elsewhere on the map.

Example Searches:

- KJFK Centers the map on KJFK airport
- FLW Centers the map on the FLW VOR
- 32.3N/99W Centers the map on the latitude/longitude
- ◆ 324455/-0804557 Centers the map on 32°44′55″N, 80°45′57″W
- N324455/W0804557 Centers the map on 32°44'55"N, 80°45'57"W
- ◆ 3244.92/-08045.95 Centers the map on 32°44′55″N, 80°45′57″W
- **3244556/-08045576** Centers the map on 32°44′55.6″N, 80°45′57.6″W

✤ HIGAL/320/15 - Centers the map on 15nm bearing 320°M from HIGAL. If a VOR is given as the reference waypoint, then the directional information is assumed to indicate a radial, not a bearing

LAX/246R/20 - Centers map on the 246 radial, 20nm from LAX

• LAX/246M/20 - Centers map on the 246 Magnetic bearing, 20nm from LAX

LAX/246T/20 - Centers map on the 246 True bearing, 20nm from LAX

MZB293/SLI148 - Centers map on intersection of MZB's 293 radial and SLI's 148 radial

For more information about the following SAR grid waypoint options, see the Search and Rescue Supplement in **Documents** > **Catalog** > **ForeFlight**.

✤ CAP@ORD451C - Centers the map on the middle of CAP Grid ORD451, quadrant C.

• CAP@40092CD - Centers the map on the middle of CAP Cell Grid 40092CD.

✤ GARS@176LW3 - Centers the map on the middle of GARS Grid 176LW, quadrant 3.

✤ 15RTN50008000 or MGRS@15RTN50008000 - Centers the map on the middle of MGRS grid UTM zone 15, latitude band R, 100,000m grid square TN, easting 5000, northing 8000. MGRS coordinates no longer require entering MGRS@... before the coordinate values.

## PLANNING A FLIGHT USING SEARCH

Create a route across any of the available maps by typing in multiple identifiers in the *Search* box, separated by a space, in the order in which you will visit them.

When typing a search, look for the helpful hints that appear underneath the search box. These hints provide example route searches that act as great reminders for quickly visualizing your route. Any of the search options specified in the "Finding an Airport or



<u>Navigation Aid using Search</u>" section are supported as route waypoints. Additionally airways, arrivals and departures are supported, as well as any custom waypoints you have created.

Your current location, if it can be determined, can be used as the origin for your route, as in the last example in the screenshot above: D KSGR. ForeFlight will replace the "D" with the coordinate for your position.

Entire airways can be viewed on the map by searching for just the airway identifier, for instance: *V16*. Airways can also be used in a route, just as ATC would issue them. For example: *NIKOL V244 ILC*. ARINC 424 coordinates (ex: 5275N) can also be entered in the Search box or NavLog.

DPs and STARs (as well as associated transitions) are also supported in a route. If the DP or STAR requires a runway input, ForeFlight Mobile will prompt you for one and provide an example. When briefing and flying these procedures, it is critical to *always* refer to the official arrival/departure plate from the Airport view as the ForeFlight Maps view is *not able to show heading vectors, altitude info, and certain other details you'll need*. When building a route in the search box you can also provide basic performance information about your aircraft. These can be in any order, but must come after the route waypoints. These include:

True airspeed in knots or miles per hour. Knots is the default unit unless MPH selected in the Settings view.

Altitude in feet.

• Fuel burn in gallons, liters or pounds per hour. GPH is the default unit.

Example route searches:

• KJFK KSFO - this is a simple direct route from NY to San Francisco.

• **D KSFO** - this is a direct route from your current position to San Francisco.

✤ KJFK FLW 32.3N/99W - this is a route from NY to the FLW VOR to a lat/lon waypoint.

✤ KSFO FLW/320/15 - this is a route from KSFO to a point on the 320 radial 15nm from FLW VOR. If a VOR is not given as the reference waypoint, then the directional information is assumed to indicate a bearing, not a radial. Enter "M" after the bearing to position the point on the magnetic bearing; enter "T" after the bearing to position the true bearing.

KCLT 36R.MERIL7 RDU J209 ORF J121 SIE CAMRN4 KJFK - this route includes a runway-specific departure, multiple jet airways and an arrival.

✤ KUZA KOSH 165kts 17gph 8000ft - this is a route from Rock Hill to Oshkosh with a true airspeed of 165 knots, a fuel burn rate of 17 gallons per hour, and an altitude of 8,000'.

✤ KUZA KOSH 165 17 8000 - this is the same route and performance data as the previous example, this time using the default units.

★ KJFK YQM V311 YQX 5050N 5330N 5315N EGLL - This hypothetical route from JFK to London Heathrow uses ARINC 424 coordinates between Gander and Heathrow. See <u>http://code7700.com/arinc\_424\_shorthand.html</u> for additional information.

A route search can also include a *tail number* of an aircraft setup in the **More** > **Aircraft** view. When that aircraft has performance data it will be automatically used. In this case, you won't need to include altitude, fuel burn, or true airspeed - unless you'd like to use different numbers than you provided in the aircraft's profile.

Lastly, you can also indicate a departure time in your route search; ForeFlight will use this time to incorporate the proper winds aloft forecasts into your time and fuel

usage calculations. If you don't provide a time, ForeFlight Mobile assumes you are departing ASAP. You can include the departure time as a specific time or as a time relative to *now*, as a local time or Zulu time, like this:

KUZA KOSH 165 17 8000 1315Z - The route details will be calculated for conditions starting at 1315Z. The time can be designated in Zulu time, as in the example, or local time, such as: 13:15, 1:15p, 1:15pm, 1:15a, 1:15am, or 1:15 (with no am/pm given, ForeFlight will assume you desire the next upcoming 1:15).

✤ KUZA KOSH 165 17 8000 +60 - The route details will be calculated for conditions starting 60 minutes from now. This relative time *must* begin with a + and may be specified in minutes, hours, or a combination; +60 or +60m for minutes, +2h for hours, +2:30 for 2 hours 30 minutes.

To clear the current route, bring up the edit view and tap the Clear button.



## PLANNING A FLIGHT USING TOUCH

You can also create or edit a route using a single finger with ForeFlight Mobile's "Touch Planning". Touch Planning is based on touch-and-hold gestures on the Map: place your finger on a waypoint or other location on the map and hold it there for a second. A dialog will appear asking you to specify which location near your touch point should be used.

Add a waypoint to your current route, or start a new route: Touch-and-hold until a pop-up is displayed. Then, select the desired waypoint in the pop-up by tapping the name. If you already have a route on the map, the new waypoint will be added to the end.

Remove a waypoint from your current route: Touch-and-hold on the waypoint.
Tap the Delete button in the top right of the pop-up.

Insert a waypoint in the middle of an existing route leg: Touch-and-hold on the route leg line until it turns blue. Then, keeping your finger on the screen, drag to the location you want to add. Remove your finger from the screen and select the desired waypoint from the pop-up view by tapping its name. Or tap More to see additional options: Direct, Add to Route, or Details.



The pop-up view that appears as part of touch planning allows you to select from a list of locations near your touch point, sorted



by distance. The list shown is filtered by *All* (which includes airspaces), *Airports, Nav* (VORs, NDBs), and *Waypoints* (intersections and user waypoints). To change the filter mode, tap the buttons in the bottom of the pop-up view.

To cancel a touch planning operation, tap the **Cancel** button that appears in the pop-up view or tap the map outside the pop-up view.

When Adding a waypoint using touch, the pop-up window shows an icon next to the name to help identify the type of waypoint:



Tap the "**More**" button next to an entry in the pop-up to show additional options for that entry (see following example for KDUA):

Cancel	Insert int	o Route	
♦ 33.9 1,294	1°N/96.40° nm, 270°M, 9h	<b>V, 709'</b> 30m away	More
O KDU	IA: Durant F	Regional 1.8 nm N)	More
Direct To Add to Route De			Details
OK9 Caler	0: Boatner a, Oklahoma (i	Field 3.8 nm W)	More
<b>660</b>	K: Mc Laug	hlin Farr 10.7 nm N	m More
All	Airports	Nav	Waypoints

Tap the orange **Direct To** to make a new route direct-to that airport or waypoint from your present position.

Tap the magenta **Add to Route** to add that airport or waypoint to the end of the route.

Tap the blue **Details** to see that airport's or waypoint's detail view.

## **AIRSPACE INFORMATION**

To see information about Airspace, MOAs and Restricted Areas, tap-hold on the airspace or area on the Map. Next, tap the **All** filter at the bottom of the pop-up. Airspace information is shown in gray at the top of the pop-up and the outline of the airspace you selected is bolded on the Map. You can further highlight the airspace by tapping on its name in the popup. Tap **Cancel** (or anywhere on the screen) to close the pop-up.



## **ROUTE LINE**

The route line drawn on the map is color-coded to indicate the active leg. **Magenta** is the current leg, **blue** is a future leg, and **orange** is a past leg. Waypoints in the route are drawn with an icon to represent their type, such as a VOR.

## MANAGING USER WAYPOINTS

Sometimes you'll want to include a waypoint in your route that isn't an airport or a navaid. A user waypoint is a method of saving any single point on the map for future reference, inclusion in routes, or direct-to operations. Use a custom user waypoint any time you'd like to save a position that isn't already associated with an existing waypoint.

While using touch-planning, create your own custom waypoint from a point on the map: Tap-and-hold the point until a pop-up is displayed. Tap the More button, then the **Save** button to create and name the waypoint, which you'll be able to use in future routes.

User Waypoints may be entered one at a time at **More** > **User Waypoints**, and can also be added in bulk from KML or CSV files. See <u>this page</u> for instructions on adding user waypoints in bulk.

✤ Name: Create a recognizable name for the waypoint. Names must be one word with no spaces and must contain at least one letter. Once a waypoint has been named, you'll be able to reference it while creating routes just as you would any other waypoint.

Description: Provide a brief description of the waypoint. The description appears in the waypoint callout when you tap that waypoint in your route in the Maps view.

Lat/Lon: When creating a user waypoint via touch-planning, the latitude and longitude are determined for you based on the point on the



map that you touch. Lat/Lon coordinates can be entered in <u>4 different formats</u>.

**NOTE:** You can also enter a user waypoint as a distance and radial from an aviation point by entering the point/radial/distance information in Latitude and leaving Longitude blank. For example, entering GEP/125/10 in Latitude would create a user waypoint 10 NM away from the GEP VOR on the 125 Radial.

You can also enter a User Waypoint using the MGRS@... format described in the Search & Rescue Supplement, found in Documents > Catalog > ForeFlight. Similar to

the point/distance/radial method above, enter the MGRS@ point in Latitude and leave Longitude blank.

Tap the **Done** button to finish creating the user waypoint. Once the waypoint is created, it functions just as any other waypoint in ForeFlight Mobile.

To **delete** a single user waypoint from your device, tap More > User Waypoints and use the swipe-to-delete gesture: swipe your finger across the name of the waypoint, then tap the red Delete button. To delete ALL User Waypoints, tap the "Clear" button.

To remove a user waypoint from the route on the Maps page, tap the user waypoint bubble in the Route Editor, then choose Delete. Or touch-hold on the user waypoint in the route on the Maps page, then choose Delete.

User waypoints can be:

Searched for: Using the *Search* box at the top of the *Maps* view.

Included in a route: By entering the name of the user waypoint in the same way you would use any other airport

name or navaid when planning via search.

## USER WAYPOINT SYNC

Changes to your User Waypoints, including adding and removing waypoints, are automatically synchronized to each device that is signed-in to your ForeFlight Mobile account. For more information, see the <u>Sync chapter</u>.

## WORKING WITH THE NAVIGATION LOG, EDIT AND PROFILE VIEWS

#### Overview

The Maps view has an overlay view at the top that can be hidden or shown. Tap the FPL button in the *Maps* view toolbar to hide or show this upper overlay view.

This overlay view can be setup to show either a route Edit view, the NavLog view or the Profile view. To change between the views, tap the selectors in the lower portion of the overlay view.


At the bottom of the view is a summary of route and performance data (when available), as well as the winds aloft for the flight. Winds aloft are *only* incorporated if a true airspeed *and* altitude are provided as part of the route.

Winds aloft calculations also require an active network connection to retrieve the latest winds aloft forecast. However, once a forecast has been downloaded it will be saved for a few hours for use when offline.

To see your route without wind adjustments input an altitude that is too high in the route search, such as 80,000'. That will override any altitude in the default aircraft and prevent the calculations.

The suitcase button displays the Pack menu. Pack offers a 1-step method of downloading all chart, weather, TFR and fuel-price data needed for the route of flight currently in the NavLog.

The star button toggles the favorite status of the current route. When the star

icon is orange  $\bowtie$ , the current route has been saved as a favorite. When marking a route as a favorite, you have the opportunity to name the route as something other than the default "<Origin> to <Destination>" name; having a custom name can be helpful when locating a route in the Favorite Routes list.

The rectangle-with-arrow button is the **Send To** button. Tapping this will show multiple options:

"Mail" creates a new email message with your navigation log and a screenshot of your trip. The message also includes a link that other ForeFlight Mobile users can tap to load your route onto their iPad or iPhone. Note: this option only appears if an email account is set up in your device's Mail app.

"File & Brief" copies the current route and performance data to the File & Brief view, creating a new flight plan there. *Note*: tapping this button does not file the flight plan or submit a request for a briefing. Rather, it takes you to a page where these actions can be performed.

"Logbook" creates a new entry in <u>ForeFlight Logbook</u> and auto-fills it with the current route, aircraft, and estimated time enroute. **Note**: this option only appears if you have a subscription that includes Logbook.

"Print" allows printing of the navigation log to a connected AirPrint printer.
 (Requires iOS 4.2 or higher.)

 "Clipboard" will copy the flight plan to the iPad internal clipboard to allow "pasting" in another application. Other devices on the same WiFi network that are running ForeFlight (listed by device name). See <u>Cockpit Sharing</u>.

 "Twitter" composes a new Twitter message with your route and a screenshot of your trip. (Requires iOS 5 or higher, plus Twitter account setup in Apple Settings.)

✤ "Facebook" composes a new Facebook post with your route and a screenshot of your trip. (Requires iOS 5 or higher, plus Facebook account setup in Apple Settings.)

 "LogTen" sends a copy of your route to the LogTen logbook app, if installed on your device.

"Aspen" will copy the flight plan to your Aspen Connected Panel.

## **Edit View**

The NavLog Edit view allows for easy creation and editing of routes on the iPad. To create or append to a route, simply tap the center area and use the keyboard to enter the new route element. Any route element accepted via the Search input is valid in the Edit View, including airways and SIDs/STARs. As you make changes to the entries, the Map and NavLog views will update to reflect the new route.

Aircraft I	Airspeed	Route Ele I	men	ts		Reve I	erse		Procedure:
N101FF	KVCV GWF PDZ	V186 ROBNN	PKE.	BARET4.2	7 KSAN		Proce	edure	— SID/STAR,
145 kts	and the second distance of the second distanc					4	Rev	erse	Approach, Traffic
14.5 gph							Rou	ites	pattern, SAR
8,000'					C	lear	E	D	Routes:
Distance 444nm ETE \$h03m Wir	n <sup>s</sup> uel 44.2g nds aloft included (1 kts tailwii	nd)	Edit	NavLog	Profile	Ê	*	凸	Airway, ATC, Preferred, TEC
l Altitude	Fuel Burn				Clear F	l Route	E	ΓD	

The Route Elements are color-coded for easier identification:



Performance information (such as average airspeed or fuel burn) can be typed into the route elements area or entered using buttons provided in the Edit view (by tapping the associated button) to configure those items. **NOTE:** the more accurate aircraft Climb, Cruise and Descent performance information can only be entered in the Aircraft profile on the **More > Aircraft** page. The aircraft's information is then applied to the route when that aircraft is selected using the Aircraft button.

When there is a large difference between your aircraft's climb speeds and fuel burns and cruise speeds and fuel burns, depending on the length of the flight you may see a bigger difference between the "Detailed" option (with Climb, Cruise, and Descent performance specified) and the "Simple" option (with only an average fuel burn and speed specified.) In the table below you can compare the performance results for three different routes for both the "Detailed" (with all performance information entered) and "Simple" (with just average speed and fuel burn entered) performance profiles.

Route	Route "Detailed"			
(winds included)	Climb: 100 kts, 20 GPH, 500 ft/min Cruise: 145 kts, 13 GPH Descent: 145 kts, 9 GPH, 500 ft/min	Fuel burn: 14.5 GPH Speed: 145 kts		
KMIC - KFAR (182nm) at 8000'	18.6 gallons, 1h23m	19.1 gallons, 1h19m		
KPAO - KSMO (273nm) at 11000'	31.2 gallons, 2h09m	29.5 gallons, 2h02m		
KHOU - KELP (587mn) at 6000'	HOU - KELP 60.8 gallons, 4h09m 87mn) at 6000'			

#### Performance Examples: Detailed vs. Simple

The Altitude button displays the Altitude Advisor<sup>™</sup> which shows the modeled winds aloft at various altitudes, provided the required route and performance data are available. Altitudes resulting in a net average tailwind over the route are shown in **green**, while those resulting in a net average headwind are shown in **red**. Airports included between the departure and destination in the NavLog are treated as navigation waypoints, so the calculated time and fuel burn do not include descending to and climbing up from those airports.

Close	Altitude Advisor								
Altitude			8,000						
Winds aloft: 5 kts headwind									
2,500	winds calm	4h03m	58.7g						
3,000'	winds calm	4h03m	58.6g						
3,500'	winds calm	4h02m	58.5g						
4,000'	1 kts tailwind	4h02m	58.4g						
5,000'	1 kts tailwind	4h02m	58.5g						
7,000'	3 kts headwind	4h07m	59.8g						
9,000'	8 kts headwind	4h18m	62.3g						
11,000'	13 kts headwind	4h26m	64.3g						
13,000'	18 kts headwind	4h36m	66.8g						
15,000'	23 kts headwind	4h50m	70.0g						
Colo	ring based on winds aloft	only - no other factor	s included.						
VFR	IFR	Westerly East	erly All						

If you have entered your aircraft's Climb

performance on the More > Aircraft page, the Altitude Advisor will automatically calculate whether it is possible to reach the listed altitude based on your aircraft's rate of climb and the distance of the route.

**NOTE:** If it will not be possible to reach an altitude given your aircraft's performance, the current winds, and time available before needing to descend, the Altitude Advisor will show "-----" for that altitude's row.

When connected to a Stratus ADS-B receiver, Altitude Advisor<sup>™</sup> will only display wind effects if you have received recent winds aloft data for the entire route.

## **Procedure Advisor**

The Procedure button in the upper-right of the NavLog Edit view opens the Procedure Preview allowing you to add or replace Arrival procedures (STAR), Departure procedures (SID), Approaches, VFR traffic patterns and Search & Rescue (SAR) patterns in the route.

Departures, Arrivals, Approaches and Traffic Patterns require that at least one airport be entered in the NavLog. SAR patterns can be entered without an airport in the NavLog.



#### Departure

Tap **Departure** to see a Preview map of the different SIDs available from the airport in the NavLog. The Preview map can be panned and pinch-zoomed so you can see details of the different SIDs.

Tap a Departure name in the list on the left, or tap the boxed name on the Preview map to see all of the transition options for that SID.



Then tap the Transition (and runway if required). When the desired SID, Transition and runway (if needed) are displayed, tap "Add to Route" to insert that SID into the route.

After adding a SID the Procedure Preview stays open so you can add additional elements to your route, such as an Arrival or an Approach.

To close the Procedure Advisor window and return to the Maps view, tap "Close" or tap anywhere not on the Procedure Preview window.

## Arrival

Tap **Arrival** to see a map of the different STARs available at the destination airport in the NavLog. As when adding a SID, tap an Arrival name in the list on the left, or tap the boxed name on the Preview map to see all of the transition options for that STAR.



If the list of Arrivals is longer than the Procedure Preview window, scroll down to see the remaining Arrivals. Then tap the Transition (and runway if required). When the desired STAR, Transition and runway (if needed) are displayed, tap "Add to Route" to insert that STAR into the route.

#### Approach

Tap **Approach** to see the available approaches for that airport. If a current METAR is available, the runways with the most favorable winds are highlighted in the list.



Tap an Approach to see the preview including the available IAFs. Choose an IAF by tapping in the list on the left, or on the Maps page, then tap "Add to Route".



Once the Approach has been added you can change between approaches or IAFs by tapping the Procedure Advisor button again and selecting a new Approach. Or tap the colored Approach oval in the NavLog and choose **Change Approach...** or **Change IAF...** 



If an Approach entry includes a hold, ForeFlight Mobile will automatically insert the correct Direct, Parallel, or Teardrop entry based on the direction you're coming from.



**Direct Entry** 

**Teardrop Entry** 



**Parallel Entry** 

#### **Activate Vectors to Final**

Activate Vectors to Final erases any existing IAF, draws a light magenta 30nm extension from the FAF, and plots a direct-to route from your present position to a point 3nm outside the FAF. You can reactivate Vectors to Final anytime to redraw the line from your current position to the point 3nm from the FAF.

Tap the colored Approach oval in the NavLog and choose **Activate Vectors to Final** or tap the Procedure Advisor button and re-select the approach and choose Activate Vectors to Final.



## **Traffic Pattern**

Tap the **Procedure** button, then tap **Traffic Pattern** to display VFR traffic patterns for the airport at the end of the current route. If current winds are available, the runway selections with the best winds are highlighted in the list. Wind direction, speed and age of observation are also shown at the bottom of the list (scroll down if necessary to see the winds).

Procedures	KMIC Runways Close	Back	KMIC 45° TO 32L Close
Rwy 06L >		Straight In	
Rwy 06R 2,122' x 150', Fair turf		LEFT TRAFFIC (DEFAULT)	
Rwy 14L		45 Best Side	
3,263' x 75'		Cross Midfield, Teardrop	
Rwy 14R 3,266' x 75'		Cross Midfield, Direct	
Rwy 24L		RIGHT TRAFFIC	TKUIT
6,166 X 100,148 MIT		45°	
Rwy 24R 2,499' x 75'		Cross Midfield, Teardrop	
Rwy 32L		ALL CONSTRUCTS	
3,266' x 75'		Cross Midfield, Direct Best Side	
Rwy 32R			
3,263' x 75'			
Winds: 350° at 8 kts (61m app)		Add to Route	

After selecting a runway the available pattern entry options are displayed, such as Cross Midfield or Straight-in. For non-towered airports the entries are sorted based on each runway's pattern side (right or left).

Additionally, entries are highlighted that make the most sense for your route's direction of flight. Tap an entry to add it to the end of the current route (or to replace one already in the route). Traffic patterns are automatically removed from a route when certain route edits are made, such as reversing the route.

**IMPORTANT:** Traffic patterns cannot currently be sent to another device via <u>Cockpit Sharing</u>.

#### Search and Rescue

On the iPad, **Search and Rescue** (SAR) patterns can also be inserted using the **Procedure** button (when the Enable Search and Rescue setting is ON). For more details about SAR features, see the Search and Rescue Supplement, in **Documents** > **Catalog** > **ForeFlight**. SAR patterns created on an iPad can be sent to an iPhone, but cannot be created on an iPhone.



## Reverse

The Reverse button reverses the current route, and removes SIDs, STARs and Approaches.

#### Routes

The Routes button displays the Route Advisor and any special routes that can be found for the origin and destination you entered in the route entry area. When selecting a route in the list, it will replace the route setup in the entry area. Multiple types of routes are displayed when available, these include:

TEC/Preferred - these routes are commonly used and can be viewed even when offline.

ATC - these are routes that ATC has issued as clearances for in the past.

Airway - these are victorairway based routes. These are generally only available when



connected to the Internet, though all routes are saved to the iPad once downloaded.

The Clear Route button can be used to remove all route entries. A confirmation button will be shown when the Clear button is tapped.

#### **Route Entry Area**

The main route entry area is used to add, reorder, or remove route entries. A route entry is any waypoint, airway, or other route element. To add an entry to the end of the route, tap anywhere in the dark blue area of the route entry box. This will show the keyboard. Type in the ID of the route entry to add.

To add a route entry in the middle of the route, tap any existing entry to reveal the action menu for that entry.

Tap either of the insert buttons to show the ID entry field. Type in the new entry to add and press Insert or tap the return key on the keyboard.

To jump to an entry on the Map, tap the entry and tap the "Show on Map" button.

To go Direct-To a route entry, tap it and tap the "Direct To" button.



To remove an entry, tap it and select Delete. Alternatively, you can hold you finger on the entry briefly to "pick it up". Then drag it out of the route edit area and release it to delete it.

To move an entry, hold your finger on it briefly to "pick it up" then move it to the new location and lift your finger to "let go."

## **NavLog View**

The navigation log displays each leg of the route, with course (or heading, if winds aloft are included for your route), distance, fuel burn, and time statistics.

The table listing shows the start and end points of each leg, along with the leg statistics. You can select whether to display only Totals columns, only Leg columns or Both Totals and Leg columns (as below) in **More** > **Settings** > **Nav Log Columns**.

FROM		то	HDG	TOTALS			LEG			REMAINI	NG	ETA
😑 ксно	-	😑 РОМ	296°M	10nm	1.0g	4m09s	10nm	1.0g	4m09s			
🔵 РОМ	->	COVIN	257°M	15nm	1.5g	6m23s	5nm	0.5g	2m13s	2.6nm	0m53s	7:46 PM
o covin	-	O HOPUN	257°M	16nm	1.7g	6m52s	1nm	0.1g	0m28s	3.7nm	1m16s	7:47 PM
- HOPUN	-		257°M	21nm	2 10	8m52s	5nm	0.50	1m59s	8 3nm	2m51s	7-48 PM
Distance 1 ETE 0h50m	15nm Wind	Fuel 12.1g s aloft includ	ed (7 kts	headwin	d)		Edit	NavLog	Profi	le 🌔	<b>*</b>	ம்

Planned Data: Information in the From, To, Heading (or Course), Totals, and Leg columns represent the planned route and is based on the information provided in the Search box, or based on your selected aircraft's performance profile. This information is not updated once displayed.

Real-Time Distance, ETE/ETA: The *Remaining* and *ETA* columns are updated in real-time based on current GPS position and groundspeed. The distance remaining on the leg, estimated time enroute for the leg, and estimated time of arrival at the next waypoint are displayed.

**NOTE:** during pre-flight planning on the ground, the *Remaining* and *ETA* columns will not show accurate information, because they require actual (real-time) GPS speed and position to update.

Tap on a waypoint ID in the table to jump to that waypoint on the map.

Tap the arrow button **CTZ I CTZ** to adjust your route to any leg, or direct to a waypoint on a leg.



#### **Profile View**

While planning your flight, the Profile view (iPad only, Pro or Pro Plus subscription required) shows a cross section with your planned altitude relative to the terrain and obstacles within a selectable-width corridor along your planned route of flight (default is 2nm-wide: 1nm on either side). In flight, the Profile view automatically switches to show obstacles and terrain 50nm ahead of your current location. US Obstacle and Terrain data must be downloaded to the iPad to use Profile view.

By default, the terrain profile is colored **green** in areas where there is more than 1000' clearance between your planned altitude (or actual altitude while airborne) and terrain/obstacles. The terrain profile changes to **yellow** for those areas where the terrain/obstacle clearance is between 100' and 1,000'. The terrain profile changes to **red** in those areas where there is less than 100' terrain/obstacle clearance or where the terrain/obstacle is above your planned or actual altitude.



After you enter a route in the NavLog box, tap the Profile button at the bottom of the NavLog to display a cross-section of the terrain and obstacles along the chosen route.

Waypoints along your route are depicted as thin vertical white lines with the waypoint identifier displayed along the bottom of the profile view beneath the vertical line.

Adjust the planned altitude by touching the altitude block on the left side of the Profile view and sliding it up or down as desired. If your proposed altitude along your route intersects an obstacle or terrain ahead, the sky area will change from **Blue** to **Red**, the Clearance numbers will display in **Red**, and the First Strike section will indicate how far away (in nautical miles) from your present position the conflicting terrain or obstacle will intersect with your proposed altitude.



Planned altitude: touch-hold, slide up/down to change

Distance to first possible terrain/obstacle strike

If the route is in the US, you will also see obstacles depicted along the route as thicker vertical lines. The obstacles are displayed to scale based on their altitude AGL.



#### **Corridor Width / Alert Altitudes**

Tap the gear button to the right of Profile to choose different total corridor widths. Any obstacle or terrain feature within the selected corridor width centered on the route will be shown on the Profile view.

Choose the Hazard Altitude to select the relative altitudes from your aircraft for terrain & obstacle yellow & red warnings for the Profile view and Hazard Advisor.



## Zoom in/out

The default Profile view automatically scales to show your entire route. To zoom in on an area of interest, touch two fingers to the Profile view then slide them apart horizontally. Pinch them together to zoom out.



#### Show altitude by "scrubbing"

Touch and hold a single finger anywhere in the Profile view to open a pop-up display with altitude and clearance details for that point. A colored icon (dot) is displayed along the route line at that location. Scrub (drag) a finger left or right across the Profile view to view the terrain clearance at your desired point.



Touch and Scrub (drag) 1 finger across profile to see altitude, clearance and distance from origin

#### Ruler

When you touch two fingers to the Maps page to display the ruler, the Profile view changes to display the Obstacles and Terrain information under the ruler. You can also "scrub" along the Profile view to see the altitude and clearance pop-up for the area corresponding to points along the ruler's path.

Single-tap on the Maps page to remove the ruler and return to the Route/Flight Profile view.



#### Aircraft view in flight

In flight, the Profile view automatically changes to "Aircraft" mode, which shows obstacles and terrain 50nm ahead of your present location. Pinch-zoom the Profile view to view less than 50nm ahead. Also in Aircraft Mode, your GPS altitude (MSL and AGL) are displayed to the left of the aircraft icon. Tap the "Route" button to show your planned route at your planned altitude in the Profile view. Tap the "Aircraft" button to return to the aircraft view mode.



## **Single-waypoint Search**

To find out about another waypoint, airport or navaid that is not on the active route in the NavLog, simply enter the waypoint, airport or navaid into the Search box. The route will remain active, but the searched-for item will be highlighted on the screen. You can explore that waypoint (such as viewing an airport's details in a popover view) without affecting the active route, and you can also add it to the route as you would any other location on the map.

## **ENGAGING THE MOVING MAP**

When the aircraft is not in motion, the current location is shown as a blue dot. When the aircraft is in motion, the current location is shown as an aircraft, which is selected in the **More** > **Settings** view. If the aircraft doesn't show up on the Map, please review the GPS troubleshooting tips on our web site at <u>www.foreflight.com/</u> <u>support/gps</u> The map can be set to automatically scroll to keep the current location on the screen. Activate this auto-centering mode by tapping the crosshair button in the top right of the screen, in the gray toolbar. The button turns blue when auto-centering is engaged.



## Track Up

Auto-centering can be set to operate in Track Up mode (the top of the screen is rotated to your current GPS track direction), Track Up Forward mode (Track Up mode with the aircraft moved slightly down the screen) and North Up mode. Change modes by tapping the "configure" button with the gear icon in the Maps toolbar. You can also quickly toggle between North Up and your last Track Up mode by tapping the circular "orientation" button just under the auto-center button.

**NOTE:** If Track-up is selected while stationary, the map will not rotate. Once the aircraft starts moving, the map will rotate so the direction of travel is at the top of the map.

Tap the gear icon in the Maps toolbar to display Settings, then choose Autocenter Mode: North Up Track Up Centered Track Up Forward



Tap the crosshair button again or manually pan or zoom the map to disable the auto-centering mode. If you pan the map while in track-up mode the current map rotation will be maintained until you tap the auto-center or orientation button in the upper right of the Maps view.

You can prevent the automatic disabling of auto-center mode when panning by changing the Auto Center Deactivate mode in Settings. When that is set to Manual,

you cannot pan the map when auto-center mode is ON. Tap the crosshair button to turn auto-center mode OFF so you can pan the map.

Note that only the iPad Cellular model contains a GPS receiver. The Wi-Fi-only iPad does not contain a GPS receiver. In order to use the mobile map functionality with a Wi-Fi-only iPad, you must use use a Stratus ADS-B + GPS receiver or an external GPS receiver (see: <a href="https://www.foreflight.com/support/gps">www.foreflight.com/support/gps</a>).

## **Distance Rings**

Distance Rings displays 3 concentric rings with markers around your aircraft's current position, so you can quickly judge the distance or time from your location to other locations on the chart.

The small green triangles on the rings align with your track and the ring scale labels (either nm or time) align with your right wing.



To display the Distance Rings, tap the Map Settings "gear" button to display the drop-down menu, then slide the Distance Rings switch ON or OFF, or change the setting in **More** > **Settings**.

As you zoom out on the Map the inner rings and scale markers automatically hide to de-clutter the view.

The 3 concentric Distance Rings can be displayed in several styles, selected in **More** > **Settings**.

Automatic	Distance	Time
NM, ring scales adjust	5, 10, 15 NM	5, 10, 30 minutes
automatically as the map	10, 20, 50 NM	10, 20, 60 minutes
	20, 40, 100 NM	

If an Automatic or Distance-based measurement is selected, the rings are only displayed if you have a GPS fix. If a Time-based measurement is selected, the rings are only displayed when you have a GPS fix AND are moving at more than ~10 knots. The rings are hidden when there is no GPS fix, or when moving at less than ~10 knots when a Time-based measurement selected.

## Glide Advisor<sup>™</sup>

The Glide Advisor uses your aircraft's glide ratio, current GPS altitude AGL, surrounding terrain height, and winds aloft (either Packed before your flight, or updated in-flight via ADS-B or SiriusXM) to present a continually-updated ring showing your glide range. **IMPORTANT**: Prior to use, Glide Advisor must be configured with your aircraft's best glide speed and glide ratio (see below).

The Glide Advisor ring shows when your GPS altitude is more than 200' AGL. When the Glide Advisor ring is displayed, the parameters are shown in the lower-right corner of the Maps page. If you have entered glide information for each aircraft (see below), the N-number of the selected aircraft is also shown for quick verification that the correct parameters are being used.

# Glide: 70KIAS, 8.0:1 Glide: 70KIAS, 7.9:1 (N101FF)

In the examples below note the difference between the Glide Advisor ring shape in relatively flat terrain, vs. rising terrain, where the ring shape appears irregular due to the height of the surrounding terrain. In these examples the ring is not centered on the aircraft's position due to the effect of winds.



At 6,500' AGL, flat terrain ahead.

At 12,500' AGL, rising terrain ahead

Before using the Glide Advisor, you must enter the best glide speed and best glide ratio for the aircraft you are flying. It is recommended that you take a few minutes to look-up and enter this information for each of the aircraft you fly so that you can display a correct Glide Advisor ring. Best glide speed and glide ratio information can be found in your aircraft's POH. You can enter this information in <u>More > Aircraft</u>, or you can enter it on the Maps page in the Maps Settings menu:

Aero & IFR 🔻 🌣 FPL 🚱 🕜	Aero & IFR 🔻 🌣 FPL 🕲 🧭	Aero & IFR 🔻 🌣 FPL 🚱 🧭				
Settings	Settings Glide Settings	Cancel				
AERONAUTICAL	GLIDE PERFORMANCE	GLIDE PERFORMANCE				
т Т	Best Glide Speed 70	Best Glide Speed				
AUTO-CENTER MODE	Glide Ratio 8.0	Best Glide Ratio				
	AIRCRAFT					
N Track Up Track Up Enryard	N101FF Glide Not Configured					
MAP OVERLAYS	N101FFT Glide Not Configured					
Route Labels	N12345 Glide Not Configured					
Extended Centerlines	N1366T 65KIAS, 7.9:1					
Glide Advisor	N1691F Glide Not Configured					
Glide Settings 70KIAS, 8.0:1 >	N735KT 70KIAS, 8.0:1					
Track Vector						

Glide Advisor requires that your aircraft's glide ratio be entered in a form like "8.0:1", meaning that you can glide 8 feet forward for each vertical foot lost - in this case you can simply enter "8.0" in the glide ratio field. However, many POHs express glide ratio in a form like "1.3 nautical miles per 1000 feet", so to get the glide ratio into the proper form you would need to multiply 1.3 by the number of feet in a nautical mile (6,076.12) and divide by 1000. Most glide ratios for powered, fixed-wing aircraft (excluding gliders) fall somewhere between 5 and 15, so if your glide ratio appears to be much smaller or larger than this, double-check your math.

## **Track Vector**

When the Track Vector is ON, a projected track is displayed in front of the aircraft icon. The length of the vector is controlled by the setting on the More page under Settings, and can be 15, 30, 45, 60 seconds; 2, 5, 10 minutes or 1/2, 1, 2, 5, 10, 25, 50 Nautical Miles.



While your track direction is changing at more than 2 degrees-per-second (i.e., the aircraft is turning) the track vector changes to a curve in the direction of your turn.

# **DIRECT-TO**

To create a direct-to change to your route, tap a waypoint on the route. Then tap the orange **Direct To** button. An alternate method is to tap

the arrow icon in the navigation log, or to tap the colored oval in the NavLog Edit view and choose **Direct To**.

Choosing **Direct To** removes all waypoints in the route prior to the selected waypoint and adds a new direct-to leg from present position to the selected waypoint.

Additionally, a direct-to change can be made to utilize a waypoint not already in the route. See the "Touch Planning" section for details.



## RULER

Distances can be measured on the Maps view at any time by holding down two fingers on the map until the ruler appears. Hold both fingers on the Map and slide them across the map to reposition the ruler to take measurements between other locations. The ruler is also handy for quickly visualizing great-circle (direct) routes between two points. When measuring distances less than three nautical miles the distance will also be displayed in feet, helpful for measuring available runway.



When using the ruler in flight, the current groundspeed will be used to show the time of travel for the distance measured. When not in flight, the TAS from your current route or default aircraft will be used instead.

Fuel burn estimates are also shown using the fuel burn provided for the current route or from the default aircraft. All time and fuel estimates are based on no-wind conditions. Initial course bearings are also shown from each side of the ruler.

The ruler will remain on the Map after you remove your fingers. To remove the ruler, tap on the Map.

# VIEWING AND HIDING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

To show or hide the Instrument Panel, tap the "instrument" icon (on the iPad, now located in the menu at the top of the screen)



When a position fix is available, the instruments in the Instrument Panel at the bottom of the map update to reflect the latest values for groundspeed, track, and geometric MSL altitude. Additionally, an accuracy value is provided as an indication of the quality of the fix (lower numbers are better).

	Height AGL	Bearing Next	Track	Distance to Next	ETE Next	Accuracy (Stratus)	
ETE Dest	Height AGL <b>0'</b>	Bearing Next	Track	Distance to Next	ETE Next	Accuracy (Stratus)	ETA Next

On the iPad, 6 instruments are displayed in the Instrument Panel in portrait orientation and 8 in landscape orientation. On the iPhone, 4 instruments are displayed in portrait and 6 in landscape.

The instruments on the right and left ends of the Instrument Panel in Landscape mode are hidden when the device is rotated to Portrait. The default instruments displayed in the Instrument Panel can be replaced with an instrument of your choice by tapping an instrument and selecting a new one from the pop-up list.

The Select Instrument pop-up displays all available instruments. Be sure to scroll the list up/down to see each instrument. The list provides a description of each instrument's function, as well as an indication of which ones are already displayed. **NOTE:** When in Portrait orientation, the

STANDARD			
Rate of To Rate of tur	u <b>rn</b> m in degrees	per second	
Vertical S Shows ver	peed (alread	<b>iy shown)</b> n FT/min	
NEXT WAY	POINT		
ETE Next Time to ne	(already sho ext waypoint	own)	
ETA Next Time of an	rival at next w	vaypoint	
Distance Distance t	to Next (alre	ady shown) int	~
Bearing N Bearing to	lext next waypoir	nt	

2 additional instruments visible in Landscape are shown as being "(already shown)" even though they are not visible on the screen.

Standard	Next Waypoint	Destination	Other
Groundspeed	ETE Next	ETE Dest	Current Lat/Lon
GPS Altitude	ETA Next	ETA Dest	Zulu Time
Pressure Alt *	Distance to Next	Distance to Dest	Blank
Height AGL #	Bearing Next	Bearing to Dest	
Height MEF #	Course Next	Descent to Dest	
Track	Cross Track Error		
Accuracy	Nearest Airport		
Rate of Turn	Nearest Navaid		
Vertical Speed			
Climb Gradient			

The following instruments are available in the Instrument Panel:

**Pressure Alt** is the pressure altitude as detected by a barometer sensor, if present. \*: iPhone 6/6+, iPad Air 2, or appropriately equipped external device required.

**Height AGL** shows the GPS altitude above the highest terrain within a 1/4 nm circle around your present location. **#**: iPad only, Pro or Pro Plus subscription required.

**Height MEF** shows a dynamic Maximum Elevation Figure for a 1/2 degree latitude by 1/2 degree longitude box centered on your aircraft's location. MEF is calculated as: the tallest obstacle or terrain in that box, rounded up to the nearest 200 feet. **#**: iPad only, Pro or Pro Plus subscription required.

**Nearest Airport** shows the Cardinal position and distance from the nearest airport to your present location.

**Nearest Navaid** shows the Navaid identifier and the radial and distance from that Navaid.

# **USING FAVORITE ROUTES**

To view a favorite route, tap the double-star button in the dark blue tool bar at the top of the Maps view. A list of your favorite routes is displayed.



⊡

Tap a route in the list to make it the current route.

To delete a route from the favorites list, use swipe-to-delete on the route.

The favorites list can be re-ordered by tapping the **Edit** button. Once in *Edit* mode a three-bar icon is displayed on the right of each route in the list. Tap-and-hold on the three bar icon until the row appears to lift up, then drag the row to the desired location in the list. You can also delete the route by tapping the red button on the left.

Note that removing routes from your *Favorites* list will not affect items displayed in the *File and Brief* view.

# **USING RECENT ROUTES**

Every route shown on the Map is automatically saved to the Recent routes list. This provides a great way to quickly jump to a previously viewed routing or performance configuration.

View this list by tapping the clock icon in the dark blue tool bar at the top of the view. Tap a route in the list to make it the active route.

Delete a route from the recents list using swipe-to-delete, or delete all routes from the recents list by tapping the **Clear** button at the top of the list.

# **FAVORITE AND RECENT ROUTE SYNC**

Changes to your Favorite and Recent routes, including adding, removing and change the order of the routes, are automatically synchronized to each device that is signed-in to your ForeFlight Mobile account. For more information, see the <u>Sync chapter</u>.

# **CLEARING A ROUTE**

Clear a route from the Map by tapping the "Clear" button in the NavLog Route Entry area bar in the upper overlay view of the *Maps* view. Tap the "3-bar" NavLog button (bright blue in top-middle of this screenshot) to show the NavLog:

iPad 🗢					7:	23 AM				7 51% 💷
World Map	•	\$	=	8	0	*	٢	Q Search	n waypoint ID o	or route
N101FG	KVCV	GWF	PDZ	V186	RO	BNN	PKE.BA	ARET4.27	KSAN	Procedure
145 kts										Reverse
14.5 gph										Routes
8,000'									Clear	ETD
Distance 444nm	Fuel 45.6g						-	-	/ <u>```</u>	
ETE 3h09m Win	ds aloft incl	uded (4 I	kts head	wind)		_			Clear All	a

# Alerts

# **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

ForeFlight Mobile provides a number of in-app audio and visual alerts that help to keep pilots aware of potential hazards and improve situational awareness in flight and on the ground. Alerts appear in red or beige rectangles in the upper third of the screen and persist for several seconds; they can be dismissed more quickly by tapping on them. Audio alerts can be silenced, and individual alerts disabled entirely in **More** > **Settings** > <u>Alerts</u>.

## **RUNWAY PROXIMITY ADVISOR**

ForeFlight Mobile has a visual and audio alert system that triggers when you taxi near or onto a runway. This system uses GPS and geographic runway safety areas to alert pilots as they approach or enter a runway environment. This feature is available for all ForeFlight subscriptions.

The system runs automatically in the background, regardless of which part of the app is currently visible. ForeFlight Mobile must be running and visible on the iPad screen for the system to function. Essentially all airports in the USA are supported.

As you near the runway the system will provide an "Approaching" alert which includes the name of the runway. Upon entering the runway itself, the system will provide an "Entered" alert, which includes both the name of the runway and the length of runway remaining in feet, rounded to the nearest hundred. If the aircraft is not clearly at one particular end of the runway, the system will alert with both runway end names and will not include a length remaining upon entering the runway. For instance, it will say "02-20" instead of just "02".

To receive audio alerts in your headset, use a bluetooth-capable headset and



connect it to the iPad. Ensure that the iPad volume is set to an appropriate and safe level.

If you are using a vibration-capable device, like the iPhone, the device will vibrate when audio alerts are given.

Alerts are automatically disabled when the aircraft is stopped or traveling faster than 40kts. Note that you may receive an alert on take-off if you cross a different runway early in the take-off roll. Similarly, on landing you may receive an alert if you cross another runway while rolling out. You will not be alerted about entering your landing runway when landing - you have to *taxi* onto or near a runway to get an alert.

# **CABIN ALTITUDE ADVISOR**

If your iPad/iPhone is equipped with a barometric pressure sensor, or is connected to an external device that provides that capability (such as a Stratus 2S or Garmin Flight Stream 210), ForeFlight will monitor your cabin's pressure altitude and provide alerts when you pass 12,000' MSL and 25,000' MSL.



Each alert will not sound more than once every 30 minutes.

# **TRAFFIC ALERTS**

When connected to an external device that provides ADS-B traffic data (such as a Stratus 2S), ForeFlight can issue alerts when another aircraft passes within 1.8NM horizontally and +/- 1,200' vertically of your aircraft's position. See <u>Traffic Alerts</u> for more information.

# **TFR ALERTS**

TFR Alerts monitor your GPS position and track for nearby known TFRs and provide visual and/or audio alerts to warn you if your present track will take you inside (or over/under) a known TFR within the next 5 minutes, even if you don't have

the TFR map layer turned on. Four different alerts are possible based on your position relative to the TFR: "TFR Ahead", "TFR Below", "TFR Above", and "Inside TFR".

If ForeFlight detects that you will enter or pass within three nautical miles of an active (or soonto-be active) TFR within the next five minutes it will issue a "TFR Ahead" alert, or "Upcoming TFR Ahead" if the TFR is not yet active. A TFR's altitude (MSL or AGL) is taken into account when determining if you will enter it, and an adjustable altitude buffer is provided in **More > Settings > Alerts** so you can customize how close your altitude must be to the TFR for the alert to activate.

The altitude buffer has settings for 500', 1000', 2000', and 5000'. If you are outside a TFR's altitude but within the selected buffer altitude, ForeFlight will issue "TFR Below" or "TFR Above" alerts as you pass respectively above or below the TFR. If you enter a TFR within its altitude range ForeFlight will issue an "Inside TFR" alert.



## TFR ALERTS IMPORTANT NOTICE:

TFR alerts are provided **only** as a tool to increase situational awareness in flight. They **do not** replace conventional tools and practices for avoiding TFRs and should not be used as such.

ForeFlight can only provide alerts for TFRs that it has information for, which requires you to download that information before flying. Failing to do so may prevent ForeFlight from displaying alerts for active or soon-to-be-active TFRs.

**Immediately before your flight:** While still connected to the Internet, use the <u>Pack</u> feature to ensure all relevant TFR and weather data is downloaded. Alerts for TFRs issued **after** you Pack will not be shown, unless you are using an ADS-B or XM inflight weather receiver.

# **SINK RATE**

The Sink Rate alert warns you when your downward vertical speed exceeds a certain amount, which varies based on your height above ground so as to warn you sooner at lower altitudes.



At all altitudes, the descent rate required to trigger the alert must be maintained for five seconds, and the alert will only sound once every 30 seconds. This alert is automatically disabled if your groundspeed is less than 40kts.

Above 2,500' AGL (or when AGL is not known), the alert is triggered if your descent rate exceeds -4,000' per minute.

At 2,500' AGL, the alert is triggered if your descent rate exceeds -3,000' per minute.

Between 2,500' AGL and 500' AGL the descent rate required to trigger the alert decreases linearly along with altitude, down to a threshold of -1,500' per minute.

At 500' AGL the alert is triggered if your descent rate exceeds -1,500' per minute.
### 500' AGL

The 500' AGL alert is a simple callout that triggers when you descend through 500' AGL after having been above 1,000' AGL. The alert will only sound once every 60 seconds, and is automatically disabled if your groundspeed is less than 40kts.



#### **DEVICE DISCONNECT**

The Device Disconnect alert is triggered if the Bluetooth or Wi-Fi connection to a portable or panel-mounted device that ForeFlight supports is lost. This allows you to take appropriate action to restore the connection, to switch to a backup device (if available), or to continue the flight knowing that the previously connected device is no longer available. The alert is only triggered if your groundspeed is above 40 knots or if your device does not have a GPS fix.



### **DESTINATION WEATHER FREQUENCY**

The destination weather frequency callout provides you with your destination airport's weather frequency (whether ATIS, AWOS, or ASOS) as you near the airport.

The callout requires that the last item in your route be an airport (there must be more than one item in your route) and that the airport has a weather frequency. The callout occurs at a certain distance from the airport, which is greater at higher altitudes - at 5,000 feet or below the callout occurs at 20nm from the airport.



Unlike other alerts, the weather frequency popup does not disappear after a few seconds - it will remain on the screen until you dismiss it by tapping on it.

The callout will not occur more than once every 20 minutes for the same airport, but if you change the destination airport then the callout can occur again in less time for the new airport.

# Pack

#### **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

While connected to the Internet, use Pack to supplement your <u>Downloads</u> by running a preflight check to ensure you have the information you need for a trip downloaded to your device for offline (inflight) use.

Packed data is not saved somewhere different than you're used to, but is seamlessly integrated with the rest of the data you already have downloaded or are viewing over the Internet. You view the Packed charts, plates, and data as you are used to doing: on the Maps page, Plates page, Airports page, etc...

Charts and plates downloaded using Pack are for the current data cycle only and will not automatically update at the next data cycle.

Pack analyzes the route in the NavLog (or Routes page on the iPhone) by looking at a corridor 50 NM wide (25 NM on each side of your route) and 100 NM in diameter around your departure and destination. Pack will download charts and plates for any states that fall inside the boundary. In the example below the route from KMIC to KCID runs from Minnesota to Iowa but the borders of Wisconsin and Illinois both fall inside the Pack boundary. So charts and plates for WI and IL will also be selected for download when using Pack for this route.



**IMPORTANT**: Pack only analyzes the charts along your route based on the chart type selections you made in the <u>Download Settings</u> view. So for example if you are planning a flight above 18,000' be sure you have IFR High Charts turned ON.

Pack also downloads any Weather (METAR, TAF and MOS), AIR/SIGMETs, TFRs and fuel price data inside the 50 NM route corridor and 100 NM diameters departure/ destination circles.

Pack will automatically analyze your route if the Pack "Enable Auto Check" is ON in More > Settings. If it is OFF, Pack will analyze your route only when you tap the Pack

button at the bottom right of the NavLog:

If Enable Auto Check is ON, Pack periodically re-analyzes the route and will alert you if new items become available. Once you Pack for the trip METAR, TAF and TFR updates will be downloaded automatically, provided the route has not been changed.

Even with Pack, it is a recommended best practice to check that the desired areas have been selected on the <u>Downloads page</u>. This will speed up packing since fewer charts and plates will need to be downloaded when using Pack before a flight.

If your route includes states you have not selected to download in More > Downloads > United States, Pack will download that state's data but the state will not be selected for ongoing downloads (in future data cycles) in More > Downloads > United States. This means that when the next data cycle goes live, the states that were Packed will shows as Expired. Clear the message by tapping More > Downloads > Delete > Delete Expired.

**Tip:** Pack for your flight (see below) once you've finished planning your route to ensure you have the data needed for your flight and so you have time to review relevant TAFs, METARs, NOTAMs, TFRs, etc. Shortly before you head to the plane for the flight, use Pack one more time to make sure you have the latest available data.

**IMPORTANT:** While Pack is downloading, **DO NOT** start or cancel downloads on the <u>Downloads page</u>.

## PACK FOR A FLIGHT

#### iPad

After entering a route in the NavLog, Pack analyzes the route to determine if any data needs to be downloaded. If data does need to be downloaded, a red "!" is displayed on both the Pack (suitcase) button and the NavLog hide/show button.

iPad 중					10:	33 AM					7 * 5	92% 💷 )
VFR & TFR	is 🔽	\$		6	0	**	٢	Q Se	arch waypo	pint ID or	r route	Ο
N101FF	KSM		V25	OSI	KSQ	)					Proce	edure
145 kts											Rev	erse
14.5 gph											Rout	es (6)
8,000'									С	lear	E	D
Distance 188nm ETE 1h20m Win	Fuel 19. Ids aloft in	2g ncluded (3	kts head	dwind)			Edit	NavLog	Profile	•	*	ம்

Tap the Pack (suitcase) button at the bottom of the NavLog to open the Pack popup and review the list of needed downloads. An estimate of the amount of data to be downloaded is shown in the lower left corner.

Tap the blue **Pack** button to download all listed items. If you are short on time and only want to download a few items, instead of tapping the Pack button, tap on the blue download arrow next to each item(s) you want to download. **REMEMBER:** information you don't download will not be available in flight.

Close Pack - KSMX to KSQL		Close Pack - KSMX to KSQL		Close	Pack - KSMX to KSQL	
METARs, TAFs, AIR/SIGMETs, TFRs	t Mb	METARs, TAFs, AIR/SIGMETs, TFRs	0			
Fuel Prices	614 KB	Fuel Prices	614 KB			
Airport NOTAMs	<b>0</b> 4 K23	Airport NOTAMs	488			
UNITED STATES		UNITED STATES			0	
IFR Planning / Ocean Charts	0 76 MB	IFR Planning / Ocean Charts	0 76 MB			
					All Packed!	
You need to pack for this trip. Total 78 MB	Pack	Packing Total	— 78 MB Pack	You're packed a	and ready to fly!	Close

Tap outside the Pack pop-up to close the pop-up and continue using ForeFlight while the Pack data is downloading. Tap the Pack (suitcase) button on the NavLog to open the pop-up to check Pack status. When Pack has finished downloading the ! will disappear.

If the route is changed significantly while Pack is downloading, the Pack downloads will stop automatically and the Pack Alert pop-up will appear.

If Pack seems to stop downloading, close the Pack window, return to the NavLog and make a change to the route

(e.g., delete then reinsert a point). This will cause Pack to reset and re-analyze the route.

#### iPhone

Pack is available on the Route page, which is accessed by tapping on the Menu button, scrolling down to the Routes section and either (1) tapping on any one of the listed routes; (2) tapping on the Favorites or Recents button and selecting a route; or (3) tapping on Create to make a new route.

After choosing or entering a route, scroll to the bottom of the Route page to the Pack line. After a few seconds, Pack will analyze the route to determine if additional items need to be downloaded.

•	•••• AT&T 🖘	<b>₹</b> 6:	24		1	* 🗖	••	•••• AT&T 🧟	۶ 6	24		7	* 🗖
	Routes	Ro	ute		N	laps		Routes	Ro	ute		N	laps
E	୍ର KEMV GI	UMBE V213	3 HELI	VA KILI	М	0		୍ର KEMV G	UMBE V21:	3 HELI	NA KILI	л	0
К 14	EMV TO KILI I8nm	м		ETE 1	: <b>01 @</b> 1	l 45 kts	KI 14	EMV TO KILI I8nm	м		ETE 1:	<b>01 @</b> 1	145 kts
#	FROM	то	CRS	TOTALS		1	#	FROM	то	CRS	TOTALS		
5	O JOSCH	o WALLO	200°M	112nm		0h46m	5	O JOSCH	o wallo	200°M	112nm		0h46m
6	🔵 WALLO	HELNA	181°M	126nm		0h52m	6	o WALLO	HELNA	181°M	126nm		0h52m
7	HELNA	<mark>●</mark> KILM	187°M	148nm		1h01m	7	HELNA	<mark>●</mark> KILM	187°M	148nm		1h01m
	l.	Winds aloft	not inc	luded					Winds aloft	not inc	cluded		
I	Route Ad	visor				>		Route Ad	visor				>
	Pack					>		You need	to pack f	or trip	(812 1	MB)	>
	*			Rever	se	山		*			Revers	ie	山

If items are needed for your trip, the "Pack" line will change to, "You need to pack for the trip (## MB/GB)." The ## MB/GB is an estimate of the amount of data to be downloaded.

Tap the "You need to pack for the trip" line to view details of the the items that need to be downloaded. Tap the blue Pack button to download all listed items.

If you are short on time and only want to download a few items, instead of tapping the Pack button, tap on the blue download arrow next to each item(s) you

Pack Alert Packing has stopped due to a large

change in route. Please press Pack to restart.

OK

••∞ AT&T रू 6:24 Route KEMV to KILM	┦∦■	•••••• AT&T 🖘 7:13 Route KPAO to KTRM
ETARs, TAFs, AIR/SIGs, TFRs	2 MB	METARs, TAFs, AIR/SIGs, TFRs
iel Prices	614 KB	Fuel Prices
irport NOTAMs	54 KB	Airport NOTAMs
ITED STATES		UNITED STATES
FR Charts	277 MB	VFR Charts
axi Diagrams and A/FD	31 MB	Taxi Diagrams and A/FD
ligh Resolution Terrain	241 MB	High Resolution Terrain
bu need to pack for this trip.	Pack	Packing Total 510 MB

# want to download. REMEMBER: information you don't download will not be available in flight.

If Pack seems to stop downloading, return to the Routes page and make a change to the route (e.g., delete then reinsert a point). This will cause Pack to reset and reanalyze the route.

# Sync

### **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

Sync is a fast, cloud-based system that works seamlessly in the background to synchronize Recent and Favorite Airports, Routes, Weather Imagery, User Waypoints, Aircraft Profiles, ScratchPads (iPads only), Flight Plans (both filed and un-filed), and Weight & Balance profiles between all devices signed-in to your ForeFlight account. Because sync'd information is also stored in the cloud, changes made on one device will automatically be delivered to the other device when it is connected to the Internet.

**IMPORTANT:** Sync is disabled by default for multi-pilot accounts with a shared single login.

#### USING SYNC

Activate Sync on each device in More > Settings by turning **Synchronize User Data** ON. After Sync is turned on, User Waypoints and the Recent and Favorite Airports, Routes, Aircraft Profiles, ScratchPads (iPads only), Flight plans from the File & Brief page, weather Imagery, and Weight & Balance profiles are synchronized to all devices.

If you change the order of items in a Favorites or Recents list on one device, the order of the items in the list will be synchronized to all other devices.

For example, suppose you have an iPad and an iPhone signed-in to your account, and two User Waypoints: WPT1 and WPT2 on your devices:



When you add a new User Waypoint WPT3 on the iPad, Sync will add WPT3 to the iPhone via the cloud:



If you make changes on one device while it is not connected to the Internet, the next time that device goes online Sync will send those same changes to the other device(s) via the cloud.

**IMPORTANT:** If you delete a sync'd data from one device, Sync will also delete it from ALL other devices on which Synchronize User Data is ON. For example, if you delete WPT1 from the iPhone, Sync will delete the waypoint from the iPad via the cloud:



If Synchronize User Data is OFF on one device, as soon as you turn it ON, the item that was deleted from the first device will then be deleted from the other device.

**NOTE:** If you sign-out of the ForeFlight account on a device, ALL sync'd data is also removed from that device. Then when you sign back in to your account, all sync'd data is restored to that device.

When you install ForeFlight Mobile on a new device, turn **Synchronize User Data** ON to automatically load all of your User Waypoints, Recent and Favorite Routes, Aircraft Profiles, Flight Plans from the File & Brief page, and Weight & Balance profiles into the new devicePlate Thumbnail Add Plate

**NOTE:** If a User Waypoint with the same name is manually created on two devices while one or more of the device(s) is offline, or while Synchronize User Data is OFF on one or more of the device(s), then when the devices are online or Synchronize User Data is turned ON, two User Waypoints will be shown with the same name on each device. Resolve this by changing the name of one of the same-named User Waypoints, or by deleting one of the same-named User Waypoints.

# **Cockpit Sharing**

## **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

Cockpit Sharing allows you to share a route with another device running ForeFlight Mobile, provided both devices are on the same WiFi network: either an Internet-connected WiFi-hotspot on the ground or a WiFi-equipped ADS-B receiver like the Stratus family of portable ADS-B receivers.

#### USING COCKPIT SHARING

Activate Cockpit Sharing on each device by tapping on **More > Settings** and turning "Cockpit Sharing" **ON**.

**Send from an iPad**: Tap the **Send To** button on the NavLog to see a list of all possible destinations. Tap the desired destination to send the route.

**Send from an iPhone or iPod Touch:** Choose a Route on the Routes page, then tap the **Send To** button and tap name of the destination device in the list.

On the receiving device, tap **View Route** on the pop-up to load the route, or tap **Cancel** to ignore the route sharing request.



# **Plates**

#### **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

Instrument pilots use their procedures differently in the air than when on the ground. Often, you'll view an arrival, approach, and then taxiway diagram - all without needing to return to a chart or A/FD in between. The *Plates* view is designed to account for the way you use procedures *while* you're flying.

The *Plates* view provides access to approach plates; taxiway diagrams, and arrival and departure procedures. This view enables you to organize the plates in the way that makes the most sense to you and streamlines your access to each procedure.



Plate Thumbnail

Add Plate

### **ABOUT PLATE BINDERS**

Binders provide a method for organizing plates into logical groups for easy access while in flight. A plate binder can contain any combination of:

- Airport Diagrams
- Hot Spots
- Take-Off Minimums
- Departure Procedures
- Arrival Procedures
- Instrument Approach Procedures

#### **CREATING A BINDER**

To create a new binder, tap the *Binder Selector* in the top toolbar. Use the + button to add a new binder and provide a name when prompted.

The binder is created and the *Plates* view automatically displays your new (empty) binder.

	My Plates 🔻	(Mark)
Edit	Binders	+
My Plate 7 plates	S	~
KOSH		
14 plates		
Canada		
5 plates		

#### MANAGING PLATES

There are two methods of adding plates to a binder.

The 'Tap to add plate here' thumbnail displays an intelligent list of airports gathered from airports you've used in other parts of ForeFlight Mobile. Tap an airport to see the available plates. Tap one or more plates to add them to the binder.

The *Plate Search* box in the top toolbar allows you to search for a plate by airport, or by a specific procedure.

Example Searches:

✤ KJFK - Lists all procedures associated with the JFK airport

 RHV GPS - Lists the RNAV (GPS) approaches to the RHV airport



✤ MDW ILS 13- Displays the ILS Rwy 13C approach to MDW airport in the procedure viewer.

Tap the  $\bigcirc$  icon to the right of any procedure to add it to the current plate binder. Tap the procedure name to view it.

To reorder or delete plates in a binder, tap the **Edit** button on the left side of the top toolbar.

To change the order in which a plate is displayed in the binder, hold and drag the plate to the new location. Note that you can add the same plate to the same binder more than once. For example, you might create a binder that contains plates for three local airports. You could elect to include each airport's taxiway diagram both before each airport's departure procedures *and* after each airport's approach plates, making it easier to find the diagram in context during both arrival and departure operations.

To remove a plate from the binder tap the  $\mathbf{X}$  icon in the upper left of the plate thumbnail.

#### **PLATE CONTROLS**

To hide/show the plate controls across the top of the plate and the Instrument view across the bottom of the plate, single-tap on the plate.

The plate control buttons, including Invert Plate Colors under "Settings", are shown below:



#### NOTAM ADVISOR FOR APPROACH PLATES AND AIRPORT DIAGRAMS

When you display an Approach Plate or Airport Diagram on the Plates page, ForeFlight cross checks downloaded NOTAMs and displays a warning banner at the top of the plate showing a count of relevant NOTAMs related to that plate or diagram.



Tap the banner to view the NOTAMs that are associated with the airport diagram or instrument procedure. Tap again anywhere off of the pop-up to close it.



### FBOS ON AIRPORT DIAGRAMS

When viewing an Airport Diagram (either FAA or ForeFlight) tap the "FBO" button at the top of the Plates menu to show/hide the location of FBOs that are known to sell fuel at that airport. FBOs can also be shown when the Airport Diagram is displayed on the Map (Pro or Pro Plus subscription required).



Featured FBOs are shown with a yellow flag; other FBOs are shown with a grey flag.



Tap an FBO's flag to open the FBO pop-up with <u>details about the FBO</u> including fuel prices.

#### **PRINTING PLATES FROM A BINDER**

Tap the **Print** button in the top toolbar of the *Plates* view. The *Printer Options* dialog box is displayed. From here, select a printer and a number of copies. Tap the **Print** button to send the selected number of copies of *ALL* plates in the binder to your printer.

To print only *one* procedure, tap the plate's thumbnail to display it in the procedure viewer, then tap the **Send To** button and choose "Printer."

Printing requires an AirPrint capable printer. For more information about this requirement, see:

support.apple.com/kb/ht4356

#### **ENSURING YOUR PLATES DON'T EXPIRE**

When you view a plate or add it to your binder, ForeFlight uses either a copy of the plate stored locally on your iPad (by virtue of the fact that you've already downloaded it), or uses your iPad's Internet connection to fetch the plate and store it locally on your iPad. In either case, the plates are viewable *until they expire* - whether you have an Internet connection at the time you view them or not.

When these plates expire, they are only automatically replaced **if** you have used the Downloads view to download new terminal procedures for the states/regions associated with the plates in your binder. Otherwise, the plates are only replaced when you open the binder and have an Internet connection. In-flight is not the time to discover this.

Be sure to check your selections in **More > Downloads** to ensure ForeFlight is set to download terminal procedures for all states covered in your binders and that all requested data has been downloaded. This ensures all plates in your binder will be current and available to you at any time - on the ground or in the air.

# Plates and Taxi Diagrams on a Map

### **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

This feature allows you to overlay geo-referenced US and Canada approach plates or airport diagrams on the Maps view. Viewing plates and taxi diagrams on a Map requires an active ForeFlight Pro or Pro Plus subscription. To upgrade, visit <u>www.foreflight.com/buy</u>.

In North-up mode, the plate or airport diagram is displayed on the chart rightside-up; in Track-up mode, the plate rotates along with the chart so that your ground track is towards the top of the map.

Using in-flight ADS-B or XM weather, radar and other weather information can also be displayed on the Map with the plate. Radar or Satellite can be displayed while on the ground and connected to the Internet.

You can add the waypoints on the approach by rubber-banding your route: for each waypoint, touch-hold the route line, then drag it to the waypoint and release to display the waypoint pop-up. Choose the waypoint name to add that point.



## DISPLAYING A PLATE ON A MAP

You can display a US Approach plate or Airport diagram on the map in five ways:

ies Weather	Runways Procedur	es NOTAMs Services A	/FD
Airport	>	NOT SAVED ILS or LOC Rwy 36	[1] Мар
Departure	>	NOT LOC/DME BC Rwy 18	[1] Мар
Arrivol	~	SAVED NDB Rwy 36	[1] Мар
Arrival		SAVED RNAV (GPS) Rwy 09	[1] Мар
Approach	>	SAVED RNAV (GPS) Rwy 18	[1] Мар
		NOT RNAV (GPS) Rwy 27	[1] Мар

1. From the **Airports** page, tap the **Map** button next to the desired approach in the Procedures list.



3. From the **NavLog Edit** box, tap the colored oval and choose "Show Plate..." (or "Show Airport Diagram").

5. From the **Plates** page tap the **Send To** button and choose **Map**:



2. From the **Maps** page, tap the desired airport, then tap the grey **More** button, then the **Details** button in the pop-up to select the airport, then scroll down to the Procedures section and tap Approach. Finally tap the **Map** button next to the desired approach.



4. From the **NavLog Edit** box, tap the Procedure Preview button then choose the Approach.



## CHANGING OR HIDING THE PLATE ON A MAP

Once you have displayed an approach plate or airport diagram on the map, you can change or hide it by tapping the gear button **or** by tapping on the plate itself to display the pop-up. There you will see the selected plate (highlighted in yellow with the checkmark) and you can scroll through the list of available plates to select a different plate. Tap a different plate to display it on the Map.

You can also tap **Hide Plate** to remove the plate from the Map, or tap **View Fullscreen** to open the plate on the Plates page. Turn **Show Annotations** OFF to hide any



annotations you made to the plate. Turn **Invert Plate Colors** ON for easier viewing in low-light situations, and you can adjust the transparency of the Plate on the chart using the slider.

#### **ADJUSTING PLATE TRANSPARENCY**

Once you have displayed an approach plate or airport diagram on the map, tap the Map Settings "gear" button to adjust the transparency of the plate from fully opaque (completely covers the underlying map) to more transparent so the underlying map shows through. You can also adjust the transparency of the Radar overlay (if selected).



Fully-opaque (slider to right)



Mostly Transparent (slider to left)

speed threshold.

# **Track Logs**

#### **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

Track Logging records details about your flight including track and altitude using any compatible GPS, such as an external device like a Stratus 2S, or your iOS device's internal GPS. Track Logs are synchronized across your devices using Sync. Track Logs can be sent to Facebook, Twitter and via email, are available for viewing and downloading at the ForeFlight website, and can be exported to apps like CloudAhoy and Google Earth, as well as to KML and GPX files. Track Logs can also be imported to ForeFlight Logbook as new entries if it is part of your subscription.

Track Logging is very efficient: the log files require less than 300KB per hour recorded.

#### **ENABLING TRACK LOGGING**

Track Logs can be enabled for either manual or automatic recording. tap **More** > **Settings**, then scroll to the **Track Log** section. To enable manual recoding, switch Enable Start/Stop Control to ON. When this setting is ON, the REC button and a timer indicating the length of the current recording are shown in the lower-left corner of the Maps view above the zoom buttons. To enable automatic recording, switch Enable Auto Start/Stop to ON.

#### **START/STOP LOGGING**

When automatic recording is enabled, a new Track Log is started as soon as the app detects a takeoff, which corresponds with a certain speed threshold. A new Track Log can also be started at any speed by tapping the REC button. In either case the REC button turns blue and the timer starts counting up, indicating REC the length of log file. The recording continues until the REC button is tapped again, or until the app detects a landing, which is also associated with a 04:51

With automatic recording, your location data prior to takeoff and after landing are added to the front and back of the Track Log, respectively, to account for taxiing. This extra recording time at the front of a Track Log is reflected in the timer upon takeoff.

When using the built-in GPS or a Bluetooth GPS, the recording will continue even if you switch to another app. **NOTE**: background recording is not currently available





when using a Stratus device for GPS. If you put ForeFlight Mobile in the background or quit it completely while recording a track log, the recording will stop or be incomplete.

If you put ForeFlight Mobile into the background while logging, verify that the REC button is still blue (Recording) when you re-open ForeFlight Mobile.

### **TRACK LOG LISTING**

Tap **More** > **Track Logs** to see a list of the available Track Logs. Each log entry shows the date it was recorded, the length of the recording in hours and tenths of an hour, the GPS source, and the aircraft's tail number, if it has been entered or automatically captured from ADS-B Out.

●●●●○ Verizon 穼		1:11 PM	<b>イ</b> ∦ 37% 💶 +
	Edit	Track Logs	
Ownloads	> NOVEMBER 2016		
L Accounts	KAUS - KAUS > LAiPadMini2		November 16, 2016 1.4 Total
+ Aircraft	KAUS - KAUS LAiPadMini2		November 10, 2016 1.2 Total
	OCTOBER 2016		
Weight & Balance	02XS - KAUS > LAiPadMini2		October 27, 2016 1.0 Total
Settings	50R - KAUS LAiPadMini2		October 22, 2016 1.2 Total
Vser Waypoints	> KAUS - 50R LAiPadMini2		October 22, 2016 1.4 Total
💁 Track Logs	> KAUS - KAUS LAiPadMini2		October 22, 2016 1.7 Total
Devices	> 29.90°N/97.63°W - Stratus	KAUS	October 19, 2016 1.0 Total
About	> KAUS - 50R LAiPadMini2		October 19, 2016 0.6 Total
	KAUS - 50R LAiPadMini2		October 19, 2016 0.7 Total
	KAUS - KAUS LAiPhone6+		October 19, 2016 0.1 Total
Airports M	D D E	ents Imagery File & Brief	ScratchPads More

You can delete a Track Log using swipe-delete: swipe your finger from right to left across the listing, then tap the red "Delete" button. **IMPORTANT:** Once you swipe-delete a Track Log, it is gone forever, and will no longer be available via Sync or on the ForeFlight website.

Tap a Track Log to see and edit basic information about it. Track Logging makes a "best guess" as to the starting and ending airports, but you can change those by tapping and typing over the default entry.

You can also change the name of the Track Log to something more descriptive, and add additional information such as Pilot's Name, Tail Number and Notes. If ForeFlight detects ADS-B Out capability for your aircraft it will automatically capture the tail number and add it to the Track Log.

All changes you make to a Track Log will be sync'd to the other devices on your account.

1:12 PM		7 🕴 37% 💶
Track Logs	KAUS - KAUS	ů
SUMMARY		
Name		KAUS - KAUS
Tail Number		Options
Date	)	Nov 16, 2016 7:47 AM CS
Start		KAUS
End		KAUS
Pilot Name		Optiona
Recorded On		LAiPadMini
Imported From		iOs
METRICS		
Total Distance		79 nn
Total Time		1h24n
Flight Time (not including taxi)		1h07n
Average Ground Speed		71 kt
NOTES		

#### SYNCHRONIZING TRACK LOGS TO OTHER DEVICES

Newly-recorded Track Logs are automatically uploaded to the ForeFlight Cloud when your device connects to the internet after a flight. You can then view and edit the Track Log's information on other devices on your account, as well as import it to ForeFlight Logbook, share it on social media, view it on ForeFlight's site, and email a link to the Track Log.

Emailing the full Track Log or opening it in another app on your device require that you download the Track Log's file; a pop-up when selecting one of these options prompts you to download the Track Log.



#### VIEWING A TRACK LOG ON AN IPAD OR IPHONE

When viewing a Track Log's details, tap the Send To button in the upper-right corner and tap the "foreflight.com" button to open Safari and view a summary of the flight on the ForeFlight website.

Tap the Chart selection button in the upper-left corner of the map to choose between Street Map, Aerial (Satellite) Map, US VFR charts, and US IFR Low and High charts.



### SHARING TRACK LOGS

Track Log details can be shared via email, Twitter, and Facebook (provided you have set up your accounts in Apple Settings). Tap the Track Log entry, then tap the Send to button in the upper-right of the screen and choose how you would like to share the Track Log. You can also send the Track Log to your logbook, which creates a new entry and auto-populates it with the Track Log's details.



When sharing the full Track Log via email, a KML file of the Track Log is attached to the email, along with the a link to view basic information about the Track Log on the ForeFlight website.

## **EXPORTING TRACK LOGS TO OTHER APPS**

Tap the Track Log entry, then tap the Send To button in the upper-right corner to export the data to CloudAhoy, Google Earth, or other compatible apps.

Google Earth is an excellent resource for viewing the 3-D view of the Track Log on your device.



#### VIEWING TRACK LOGS IN FOREFLIGHT ON THE WEB

Sign in to your ForeFlight account by clicking the Login button at <u>www.foreflight.com</u>, then click on the "Track Log" menu item to view all of the Track Logs on your account. Click the track log you want to view from the list on the left.



Click on the "Download" button in the upper-right then choose one of the KML options, GPX, or CSV to download the Track Log file in that format.

# Documents

#### **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

The Documents view provides access to legends, manuals, or just about any document you wish to bring with you. This view enables you to organize documents in the way that makes the most sense to you, bookmark areas of interest inside of a document, and quickly switch between reading a document and other app views.

Documents from the FAA, NAV CANADA, and ForeFlight are provided in the Catalogs view. These include useful supplemental materials like the Digital Terminal Procedures Supplemental, Class B enhancement graphics, and Aeronautical Information Manual. The Catalog view also includes any PDF, image, or Microsoft Office documents you have imported into ForeFlight Mobile from iTunes or apps like Safari, Mail, or Dropbox. NOTE: Microsoft Office documents can be viewed, but unlike PDF documents they cannot currently be annotated.



#### **ABOUT DOCUMENT BINDERS**

Binders provide a method for organizing documents into logical groups for easy access while in flight. A document binder can contain any combination of:

- FAA Documents
- NAV CANADA Documents
- ForeFlight Documents
- Imported PDF files
- Imported image files (PNG, JPG, TIF, GIF)
- Imported Microsoft Office documents (XLSX, DOCX, PPTX)

#### **CREATING A BINDER**

To create a new binder, tap the *Binder Selector* in the top toolbar. Use the + button to add a new binder and provide a name when prompted.

The binder is created and the *Documents* view automatically displays your new (empty) binder.

#### **ADDING DOCUMENTS FROM A CATALOG**

The Catalog view lets you add documents to your binder from the FAA, NAV CANADA, or ForeFlight catalogs. If you have a ForeFlight Pro or Pro Plus subscription, see <u>Document Syncing</u> for details about automatically adding documents to ForeFlight Mobile.

The Catalog view also lets you add documents to your binder that you have previously imported into the app. You can bring up the Catalog view by tapping the **Catalog** button in the top-right corner, or by tapping the 'Tap to add doc here' thumbnail at the bottom of your binder.

The Catalog view has two panes. On the left pane is a list of the available catalogs. Tap the





catalog name to view that catalog. On the right pane is the list of documents for that catalog.

Tap the • icon to the right of any document to download the document. After the download is complete, it will be added to your current binder.

Tap the <sup>•</sup> icon to the right of any document to add it to the current binder. This icon indicates that the document has already been downloaded to your iPad, but is not included in the current binder.

The  $\bigcirc$  icon indicates that the document has been downloaded and is already in the current binder.

If you wish to delete a document from your iPad and from all binders, find the document in the Catalog view, swipe from left-to-right on the name of the document, and then tap the red **Delete** button.

#### **DOCUMENT SYNCING**

If you have a ForeFlight Pro or Pro Plus subscription, you can link your ForeFlight account to a Dropbox, Amazon S3, or Box account (free or paid) at <a href="https://plan.foreflight.com/account/integrations/documents">https://plan.foreflight.com/account/integrations/documents</a>.



Click the "Connect" button (which shows if there is not yet a connected account) to link your document storage account to your ForeFlight account. If your ForeFlight account has already been linked, click the "Manage" button to manage the Catalog name (which is the name of the Smart Binder shown in the app), change sharing options, or to un-link the account.



Once linked, any compatible documents you place in the appropriate folder on your computer are automatically shown in the Smart Binder download list in ForeFlight Mobile. The Smart Binder name is set to whatever you enter in the "Catalog Name" box.

#### Computer folder locations where documents should be saved:

Dropbox: /Dropbox/Apps/ForeFlight

**Box:** /Box Sync/ForeFlight

Amazon S3: folder is selected at the time of account linkage

If you do not want document to synchronize automatically with the Smart Binder in ForeFlight Mobile, un-check the "Document Syncing" option:

When "Document Syncing" is un-checked, any documents in the Smart Binder in ForeFlight Mobile remain unchanged, and the pilot can manually add documents to or remove them from the Smart Binder.

When "Document Syncing" is checked, any documents that had been manually added to the Smart Binder when "Document Syncing" was un-checked will be removed, and the Smart Binder will automatically be updated and synchronized to match the sync'd folder. Any changes or updates you make to a document in the sync'd folder on your computer will be synchronized to ForeFlight automatically. Whenever new documents are added to your sync'd folder, ForeFlight Mobile will display a red dot with a number in it on the corner of the More tab, and on the Downloads section.

To download individual documents into the Smart Binder, tap on the **Documents** tab, then tap the **Binders** drop-down to choose the Smart Binder. Then tap on the rectangle with the document title that you wish to download. To download ALL listed documents into the Smart Binder, tap the Download button in the upper-right corner of the Smart Binder. The Download button is only visible when the Smart Binder is selected.



Or tap More > Downloads, then tap the blue "Download" button to download the new documents.

Documents listed in the Smart Binder can also be saved into another binder: switch to the other Binder using the **Binders** drop-down, tap the **Catalog** button, then select the name of the Smart Binder from the category on the left of the screen, then tap the Document title. Saving a document in another location does not make a 2nd copy of it, so can be done without worry of filling up storage space.



After a document is removed from the sync'd folder your computer, it will also be automatically deleted from any iPads that have downloaded it the next time the iPad(s) connect to ForeFlight's servers via the Internet. The removed document(s) will be deleted from both the Smart Binder and any other binders where the document(s) had previously been saved.

If the sync'd account is un-linked from your ForeFlight account, all sync'd documents are retained on the iPads that had downloaded them. The documents will remain on the iPad until they are either deleted by the pilot, or the pilot signs-out of their ForeFlight account on the iPad. Signing-out removes all sync'd documents.

If a sync'd account is un-linked but then re-linked with a different name than before, a new Smart Binder will be created on all signed-in iPads. To remove the "orphan" Smart Binder, change to More > Downloads and swipe-delete the individual documents in that "orphan" Smart Binder. Once all documents in the "orphan" Smart Binder have been deleted, quit and restart the app to automatically remove the Smart Binder. Or, sign out of your ForeFlight account in More > Accounts to remove all of the documents in the "orphan" Smart Binder, as well as the "orphan" Smart Binder.

#### **IMPORTING DOCUMENTS FROM ITUNES OR OTHER APPS**

You can import PDF, JPG, TIF, PNG, and GIF files into your document binders using iTunes, and you can import PDF documents from other apps.

Importing from iTunes - Plug your iPad into your computer using the Apple USB cord and start iTunes on the computer. Inside iTunes, click on the name of your iPad under the Devices listing on the left. On the right pane, click the Apps tab at the top. Scroll to the File Sharing section at the bottom of the page and click on ForeFlight. On the right, you will see a table titled ForeFlight Documents. Drag and drop your files onto this table. While the files are copying over, you will see a brief Sync in Progress message on your iPad. After the copying has completed, launch ForeFlight Mobile and tap on the Documents tab. The files will be imported into the app and appear at the end of your current binder. After a file is imported, it will disappear from the iTunes listing.

You can import PDF (but **not** JPG, TIF, PNG or GIF) files from other apps, such as Safari, Mail, or the Dropbox app.

Importing from other apps - Send yourself the PDF document via email as an attachment, open the email on the iPad, then tap the PDF icon, or touch-hold the PDF document if it is displayed to show the "Open in" pop-up menu. Then tap "Open in ForeFlight."



If a document does not import, make sure it is a supported file format: PDF, JPG, TIF, PNG, GIF. Very large image files or PDF files containing scanned images may open slowly, especially on earlier iPad models.

After a document is imported, it is always added to the current binder. To also add it to a different binder, open that binder, tap the **Catalog** button at the top right, and select that document from the **Imported** catalog. Imported documents cannot be added to a Smart Binder.

#### **VIEWING A DOCUMENT**

Tap any document thumbnail in a binder to launch the ForeFlight Document Viewer. This viewer supports standard pinch and expand zooming, and panning touch gestures. Swipe left and right with a single finger to change pages. You can close the document by pinching (zoom out gesture) from the view on any page and you can open a document by expanding (zoom in gesture) from the Binder view.

Tap once on a document page to bring up the toolbar at the top and page scrubber at the bottom. Tap again on the document to hide these overlays.

\$	Settings: shows the screen brightness slider, and the Invert Document Colors switch for better low-light viewing of documents.
В	Shows the table of contents for a document (if available) and any pages you have bookmarked. This menu is only shown for PDF documents.
	Toggles between full page view and thumbnail view, which shows a thumbnail for each page in the document. This button is only shown for PDF documents.
Ŷ	Display the Annotation menu. This button is only shown for PDF documents
ď	Search for text in the document. This button is only shown for PDF documents
R	Bookmarks a page in the document. This button is only shown for PDF documents.
Ċ	Shows a menu for Printing or Emailing a document. Emailing is not available for copyrighted document catalogs.
A	Disables touch interaction (zooming and scrolling), which minimizes the risk of accidental closure when in turbulence. It also disables the automatic rotation that would normally occur when the iPad is turned. The lock button can also, optionally, disable all buttons on the screen, including those that change views. That feature is configured in Settings ("Lock Disables Buttons").

Document View Toolbar Buttons



At the bottom of the screen, the page scrubber shows thumbnails for each page and lets you quickly jump around in your document.

#### SEARCHING IN A DOCUMENT

Tap the Search button to display the search box, then enter your search term(s). All matches will be shown in the scrollable expanding list. Tap the entry to jump to the desired page, where the search term(s) will be highlighted in yellow.



#### ADDING AND REMOVING BOOKMARKS

While viewing the page you would like to bookmark, tap the Bookmark button then enter the name you would like to give the bookmark and tap the "Add Bookmark" button. View all bookmarks for the current document by tapping the Table of Contents/Bookmark button and choosing the Bookmarks filter.



To remove a bookmark, tap the "Show Table of Contents or Bookmarks" button, then swipe-delete the bookmark you want to remove: swipe your finger across the title, then tap the red "Delete" button. Or you can tap on the bookmark you want to remove to will change to that page of the document. When that page is displayed, tap the bright-blue Bookmark button to remove the bookmark.

#### MANAGING DOCUMENTS IN A BINDER

To reorder or delete documents in a binder, tap the **Edit** button on the left side of the top toolbar.

To change the order in which a document is displayed in the binder, hold and then drag the document to the new location.

To remove a document from a the binder tap the **X** icon in the upper left of the plate thumbnail while in edit mode. If a document is saved in multiple binders, removing a document from only one binder does not delete it from your iPad (see below for information on how to permanently delete a document).
# DELETING DOCUMENTS FROM YOUR IPAD

There are two ways to permanently delete a document from your iPad:

1. If the document is only saved in a single binder, delete it by tapping the "Edit" button in the upper-left corner, then tapping the "X" in the corner of the document. This will remove it from the binder as well as the Download list.

2. If the document is located in multiple binders, delete it by opening the Document Catalog then using "swipe-delete": swipe your finger from right-to-left across the name of the document (or from left-to-right on iOS 6 or earlier) then tap the red **Delete** button to delete it from all binders as well as the Download list.

**IMPORTANT:** If you "swipe-delete" the document from the Document list on

**More > Downloads,** the document will be removed from memory but immediately queued for download.





If a document is showing in the Download list but is not in a binder, you must first save it into a Binder **before** using one of the methods above to delete the document completely from the iPad.

## **ENSURING YOUR DOCUMENTS DON'T EXPIRE**

When a new version of a document is available, a red badge will appear on the app icon and there will be a new item in the Downloads view. Tap the blue **Download** button at the bottom of the Downloads view to download the latest documents, along with any other data updates that are available.

FAA and NAV CANADA documents that are updated on a regular 28-day or 56-day cycle will be available for download a few days before the document expires. Your document binder will always show the version of the document that is effective, if it is available. Once the new version of a document becomes effective, it will automatically start showing in your binders and any old, expired versions will be deleted from your iPad.

# Annotating Plates and PDF Documents

# **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

This feature allows you to add your own full-color annotations to Approach plates, SIDs, STARs, Airport Diagrams and PDF Documents. This can be useful for highlighting important elements such as crossing altitudes or taxi instructions, or adding notes to your PDF documents.

Annotations are available in all subscriptions and require an iPad 2 or higher. Annotations are not available on the iPad 1. If you have a ForeFlight Pro or Pro Plus subscription, annotations you make on an Approach plate are displayed when you show the annotated <u>Plate on the Map</u>.

Annotations you add to a Plate, SID, STAR or Airport Diagram are saved at the data cycle change-over, unless the SID, STAR or Plate name changes in the new data cycle (e.g., if the TEXXN5 STAR becomes TEXXN6, or RWY03 ILS becomes RWY04 ILS due to updated magnetic variation).

Annotations you add to a PDF Document are saved if the document is updated, provided the document title stays the same during the update.



# **TYPES OF ANNOTATIONS**

There are 8 kinds of annotations available:



## ADDING AND EDITING ANNOTATIONS

There are two ways to add an annotation. When you open a plate or PDF Document, tap the Annotation button in the menu at the top of the page to display the annotation toolbar:



or simply touch-hold on the plate or PDF Document until the magnifying glass appears, then release your finger to display the pop-up Annotation menu:



Tap the button to choose the type of annotation you want to add (Text, Sticky note, or Ink drawing), then adjust the formatting and color of the annotation (if needed) by tapping the colored Annotation setting button (the colored dot) at the top of the page.

You can reposition an annotation by touch-dragging inside of the selection box. and you can resize the annotation by touch-dragging one of the blue "handles" around the annotation.

## **Choosing Annotation Color**

Tap the Color drop-down in the top menu bar to display the line Color, Opacity, and Thickness picker.

	lt	nk	
Onlas			
Fill Color			
Opacity	-	0	71%
Thickness	_	-0-	— 25 px
Color Prese	ets		
•/		•7	
02	$\bigcirc \mathcal{D}$	$\bullet \bigcirc$	

You can choose from 8 presets: six with transparent "fill" colors (with the red / ) and two with white fill.

Or tap the Color button to display the color picker. Change between the 5 color selection pages by swiping from left to right.



When using the color "circle", touch in the circle to choose the color you want, then slide the horizontal slider below the circle to adjust the brightness of the color.

## Fill Color: Transparent or "No Fill"

To choose a transparent or "no fill" color, select the Fill Color box with the red diagonal line.



## Drawing/Ink

The freehand Drawing/Ink tool allows you to choose the line Color, Opacity and Thickness. To edit a previously drawn line, tap it, then choose the "Inspector" menu.

Inspector	Note	Сору	Ink	
•	•		Color	>
	/		Fill Color	Ø >
Ţ	(		Opacity	71%
-	-		Thickness	9 px

### **Text Box**

The Text Box tool lets you pick the Text Color, the Text Box fill Color, the Opacity, the Font (Font style in a sub-menu), Font Size, text alignment, and whether a Callout line + arrow are automatically attached to the text box.

To create a text box, select the Text Box tool, tap on the Plate or Document where you want the text to appear, then type the desired text. When typing into a text box, several formatting options are available at the top of the on-screen keyboard:



To edit a previously drawn text box, tap it, then choose the "Inspector" menu, then tap the attribute you want to change.

	Text	testing Hand	0
	ICAL	Cochin	
		COMPERATE	
Size	- 12 <sub>pt</sub> +	Overlap	
		frailer New	
Font	Helvetica	Didor	
1 Ont	Tielvetied /	Exphemia UCAS	
		Pros	
Alignment		Patana	
673).		Georgia	
Oslav		Git Servi	
Jolor		<ul> <li>Helvetica</li> </ul>	
		Helvetica Neue	
Fill Color		Thisefter Text	
		horun Old Style	
2 5.8	<u> </u>	Koluneor Bangta	
Opacity —	71%	Koniegor gevanagan	
	100 C	Marker Fell	
Convort to	Collout	Manilo	
Convert to	Gallout	Nexts	

If converting the Text Box to include a Callout line + arrow, tap "Callout" in the Convert to line, then choose the Line End type.

		Text		Text
	Size	- 12 <sub>pt</sub> +	Size	— 12 <sub>pt</sub> +
	Font	Helvetica >	Font	Helvetica >
	Alignment	= = =	Alignment	= = =
Text being t	Line End	$\rightarrow$	Line End	->
	Color	<b>•</b> >	· · · · ·	
	Fill Color	>		
	Opacity	71%		$\neg \neg \neg$
	Convert to	Generic	Color	• >

You can reposition the callout line by touch-dragging on the green "corner" points.

## Rectangle

The Rectangle tool allows you to choose the line and Fill Color, rectangle Opacity and line Thickness. To draw a rectangle, touchhold then drag your finger to make the rectangle. Lift your finger to complete the drawing. To edit a previously drawn rectangle, tap it, then choose the "Inspector" menu.

Rectangle						
Color		>				
Fill Color		<b>&gt;</b>				
Opacity		71%				
Thickness	-0	9 px				

## Ellipse (Circle)

The Ellipse tool allows you to choose the line and Fill Color, ellipse Opacity and line Thickness. To draw an ellipse, touch-hold then drag your finger to make the ellipse. Lift your finger to complete the drawing. To edit a previously drawn ellipse, tap it, then choose the "Inspector" menu.

	Ellipse	
Color		<b>•</b> >
Fill Color		<ul> <li>&gt;</li> </ul>
Opacity		71%
Thickness	-0	9 px

#### Line

The Line tool allows you to choose the line Color, Opacity, Thickness as well as start and end-point type (e.g., arrow, dot, diamond, etc...). To draw a line, touch-hold then drag your finger to make the line. Lift your finger to complete the drawing. To edit a previously drawn line, tap it, then choose the "Inspector" menu.

Line	Line
Color O	Line Start —
Opacity 71%	
Thickness — 9 px	
Line Start —	$\blacktriangleleft \vdash \succ \blacktriangleright \vdash$
Line End —	Line End —

## Polygon

The Polygon tool lets you choose the line and Fill Color, polygon Opacity and line Thickness. To draw a polygon, tap your finger to each desired "corner" of the polygon. Each additional tap will extend a line segment from the previous corner to the new tap. When you tap "Done" in the menu bar, a final line segment will automatically be added to "close" the polygon.

To edit a previously drawn polygon, tap it, then choose the "Inspector" menu.

	Polygon		Inspector	Note	Сору	
Color		>	•	•		
Fill Color		× >				
Opacity		71%				6
Thickness	-0	9 px	•	-		

You can edit the corners of the polygon by touch-dragging the green "corner" point handle to the desired corner position.

## Polyline

The Polyline tool is similar to the Polygon tool, except that the shape is not automatically "closed" when you tap "Done", and like the Line tool you can choose the start and end-point types (e.g., arrow, dot, diamond, etc...).

Polyline		Polyline
Color	>	Line Start —
Opacity	71%	
Thickness	— 9 px	
Line Start		$\blacktriangleleft \vdash \succ \blacktriangleright \vdash \vdash$
Line End	· · · · ·	Line End —

To edit a previously drawn polyline, tap it, then choose the "Inspector" menu.

## Sticky-note

Tap the note icon, then tap the "Edit" button to choose the note background color and icon type. Tap anywhere not on the Sticky-note to close the Edit menu.



## **UNDO/REDO**

While adding annotations to a Plate or Document, tap the Undo (left) arrow button to remove recent annotation elements, and tap the Redo (right) arrow button to restore removed annotation elements.



## **SELECTING MULTIPLE ANNOTATIONS**

Tap the Selection button then touch-drag across multiple annotations to select several at once, then tap Group to group the items together, Copy to copy all items, or the Trash can to delete the selected annotations.

## **COPYING AND PASTING AN ANNOTATION**

Tap a previously added annotation to select the annotation and display the edit pop-up menu, then tap the Copy button.



Paste the copied annotation in a different location or onto a different page (or document) by touch-holding on the Plate or Document until the magnifying glass appears. Lift your finger, then tap the Paste button in the pop-up Annotation menu.

# **DELETING ANNOTATIONS**

Tap the annotation to select it, then tap the Trash-can button in the edit pop-up menu.



To remove all annotations from a page, tap the Annotation button, then tap Clear:



# Imagery

# **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

The Imagery view provides collections of weather images from around the globe. Images are divided into categories by type. When viewing a category a current thumbnail image is shown for each available image.

Full size images are displayed full screen and support standard pinch and expand zooming, and panning touch gestures.



## **SELECTING A COLLECTION**

Tap a collection in the left-side list to show thumbnails from that set on the right side. Other collections are available by tapping the USA/Global geography selector at the bottom of the list.

In addition to the previous Imagery selections, ForeFlight Mobile 7.1 adds several new Imagery Collections and chart types:

### **NATIONAL - Featured**

Flight Category - Updated once every 30 minutes, the flight category chart highlights adverse flight conditions affecting the conterminous U.S. and southern Canada. Using colored dots this chart depicts the lowest flight category considering both ceiling and visibility for stations reporting marginal VFR (blue), IFR (red) or low IFR (magenta). Also included are recent pilot weather reports of moderate or greater turbulence (tan) and



moderate or greater icing (green) using standard pilot report symbology.

Weather Depiction chart - Issued every three hours, the Weather Depiction chart shows an analysis of the location of surface frontal systems, surface troughs, and IFR/ MVFR conditions for the conterminous U.S., southern Canada and northern Mexico. Also included are station models consisting of sky coverage, ceiling height and present weather (precipitation, mist, fog).

Shaded areas are regions of IFR conditions with ceilings less than 1,000 feet



and/or visibilities less than 3 statute miles. Contours without shading are regions of MVFR conditions with ceilings greater than or equal to 1,000 feet to less than or equal 3,000 feet and/or visibilities greater than or equal three statute miles to less than or equal to five statute miles. No contours or shading imply ceilings are greater than 3,000 feet and visibilities greater than 5 statute miles.

Latest Surface Analysis - The mean sea level (MSL) surface analysis chart is issued every three hours by a forecaster at the Weather Prediction Center (WPC). This chart depicts the synoptic and sub-synoptic/ mesoscale features including the location of high and low pressure centers, fronts, troughs, outflow boundaries, squall lines, dry lines and an isobaric analysis. The domain includes much of North America, the Western Atlantic and Eastern Pacific



oceans and the Gulf of Mexico. This analysis is valid at the synoptic times of 0000 UTC, 0300 UTC, 0600 UTC, ..., 2100 UTC. The latest surface analysis becomes available approximately 1 hour and 30 minutes after these synoptic times.

**Today's Forecast** - The Weather Prediction Center (WPC) National Forecast Chart provides an overview of expected weather for today, with emphasis on certain hazardous and significant weather. They summarize forecasts from several of the National Centers for Environmental Prediction (NCEP) Service Centers including the Storm Prediction Center (for severe thunderstorm and tornado outlooks), the National Hurricane Center (for tropical storm and hurricane forecasts), and the



Weather Prediction Center (for information concerning heavy rainfall, flooding, winter weather, and general weather). With overlaid frontal forecasts, these displays serve as a good overview of the expected weather for today.

#### **CONUS WEATHER**

**Prog Charts** - The Prog Chart collection contains the latest surface analysis chart which is updated once every three hours. This is not a forecast, but represents the latest surface conditions valid in the recent past. This collection also contains short and extended range forecasts that are also known as "prog" charts. Short range forecasts are updated at various times throughout the day as labeled below each thumbnail image.



The primary goal of the short range forecasts are to depict the evolution of major weather systems that will affect the conterminous U.S. during the next 60 hours. These forecasts combine the Weather Prediction Center (WPC) forecasts of surface fronts, MSL pressure (isobars) and high/low circulation centers along with a depiction of the expected weather type (precipitation). The precipitation forecast shown on this chart defines expected coverage and is valid at the time on the chart (not over a range of time).

Prog charts use the following colors to depict different weather types (precipitation):

- Rain (Chance) There is chance of measurable rain (≥0.01") at the valid time.
- Rain (Likely) Measurable rain (≥0.01") is likely at the valid time.
- Snow (Chance) There is chance of measurable snowfall (≥0.01" liquid equivalent) at the valid time.
- Snow (Likely) Measurable snow ( $\geq 0.01$ " liquid equivalent) is likely at the valid time.
- Mix (Chance) There is a chance of measurable mixed precipitation (≥0.01" liquid equivalent) at the valid time. "Mixed" can refer to precipitation where a combination of rain and snow, rain and sleet, or snow and sleet are forecast.
- **Mix (Likely)** Measurable mixed precipitation (≥0.01" liquid equivalent) is likely at the valid time. "Mixed" can refer to precipitation where a combination of rain and snow, rain and sleet, or snow and sleet are forecast.
- Ice (Chance) There is a chance of measurable freezing rain ( $\geq 0.01$ ") at the valid time.
- Ice (Likely) Measurable freezing rain ( $\geq 0.01$ ") is likely at the valid time.
- **T-Storm (Chance)** There is a chance of thunderstorms at the valid time. Areas are displayed with diagonal hatching enclosed in a dark red border.
- **T-Storm (Likely and/or Severe)** Thunderstorms are likely and/or the potential exists for some storms to reach severe levels at the valid time.

Extended range Progs are also prepared by forecasters at the WPC. A new extended range forecast is issued daily around 0330 UTC and updated again at 1500

and 1900 UTC. Only surface fronts, MSL pressure (isobars) and high/low circulation centers are depicted from 72 hours (Day 3) through 168 hours (Day 7). Each forecast is valid at 1200 UTC. A forecast of instantaneous precipitation is not depicted on extended range Progs.

## **6 HR Quantity of Precipitation** -Quantitative Precipitation Forecasts, or QPFs, issued by forecasters at the Weather Prediction Center (WPC) depict the amount of liquid precipitation expected to fall in a defined period of time, in this case, six hours. Valid times are shown in the lower left. In the case of snow or ice, QPF represents the amount of liquid that will be measured when the precipitation is melted. It is important to recognize that QPF does not forecast the precipitation type or whether



or not the precipitation will be from convection. It is solely used to forecast the amount of precipitation over a given location in inches using solid colored contours based on the legend on the lower left of the chart. An "X" on the chart simply defines a local maximum precipitation amount within a contoured area. Keep in mind that precipitation amounts can vary significantly over short distances, especially when thunderstorms occur, and for this reason QPFs issued by the Weather Prediction Center (WPC) are defined as the expected "areal average."

**12 HR Probability of Precipitation** -The Probability of Precipitation (PoP) forecast issued by forecasters at the Weather Prediction Center (WPC) depicts the chances of precipitation over a 12 hour forecast period for the next three to seven days. Probabilities are contoured using solid colors as shown in the legend at the bottom of the chart. Numbers shown on the map represent a probability for a particular city over the valid forecast period.



Important: The valid time in the lower left

defines the ending time of the 12 hour forecast period. For example, a forecast valid at 00Z on February 13th would include the period from 12Z February 12th to 00Z February 13th.

**Outlook (SIGWX)** - The low-level SIGWX graphics is a forecast of aviation weather hazards, primarily intended to be used as a guidance product for briefing VFR pilots. The forecast domain covers the conterminous U.S. for altitudes below 24,000 feet (400 mb). These charts are issued four times a day and are valid at 0000 UTC, 0600 UTC, 1200 UTC and 1800 UTC. Each issuance includes both a 12 and 24 hour forecast depicting the freezing



levels (dashed cyan), turbulence (dashed orange), and low cloud ceilings and/or restrictions to visibility shown as contoured areas of marginal VFR (blue) and IFR conditions (red). A two-panel chart is also provided that presents the 12 and 24 hour forecasts in the same image.



**Convective Outlooks** - The convective outlooks issued by forecasters at the Storm Prediction Center (SPC) provide an overview of areas that may experience thunderstorms over the next eight days with emphasis on the location of severe convection. Included in this collection are the latest severe thunderstorm (blue) and tornado (red) watch areas along with categorical and probabilistic forecasts for Day 1 (today), Day 2 (tomorrow), Day 3 (the



day after tomorrow) and a categorical forecast for severe thunderstorms only for Day 4 through Day 8. Colored contours are shown to depict the threat risk of severe thunderstorms as shown in the legend below. Additionally for Day 1, a probabilistic forecast for tornadoes, large and damaging hail and strong and gusty winds is included.

Categorical Outlook Legend:					
TSTM	1: MRGL	2: SLGT			
3: ENH	4: MDT	5: HIGH			

**Convective Forecast** - The Collaborative Decision Making (CDM) Convective Forecast Planning (CCFP) guidance is a graphical representation of convection meeting specific criteria of coverage, intensity, echo height, and confidence. CCFP graphics are produced every two hours and is valid at 2-, 4-, 6-, and 8-hours after issuance time. This forecast is generated automatically and does not use



the same criteria as is used for issuing convective SIGMETs. Hatched contours include sparse coverage-low confidence, sparse coverage-high confidence and medium coverage-high confidence. A forecast for echo tops is also included. Keep in mind this is not a maximum tops forecast. This is best used for strategic planning purposes for aircraft making longer flights at altitudes above FL250.

	CONFI	DENCE:	
	LOW HIGH 25-49% 50-100%		TOPS: 100'S OF FEET MSL
SPARSE CONVECTIVE 25-39%	/ / / / / / / /	5555	25000 - 29000 290 30000 - 34000 340
COVERAGE: MEDIUM+ 40-100%			35000 - 39000 - <b>390</b> 40000+ > <b>400</b>

**Extended Convective Forecast**- The Extended CDM Convective Forecast Planning (CCFP) planning tool is a graphical representation of the forecast probability of thunderstorms. This forecast is automatically generated and identifies where thunderstorms are likely over the next 78 hours. It is important to note that this is not a precipitation forecast. Areas outside of the shaded contours could contain areas of precipitation that are not as likely to be convective. Contours are shaded on based on convective probability as shown in the legend below.



#### **GFS MOS**

**GFS MOS Ceiling Forecast** - Provides a categorical forecast for cloud base heights that are expected to be overcast or broken based on a forecast from the Global Forecast System (GFS) Model Output Statistics (MOS). Categories shown are very low IFR (brown), low IFR (dark yellow), IFR (bright yellow), marginal VFR (bright green), VFR (medium and dark green) and clear below 12,000 feet (black). Forecasts are provided at three hour intervals out to 84 hours.



**GFS MOS Visibility Forecast** - Provides a categorical forecast for prevailing ground visibility based on a forecast from the Global Forecast System (GFS) Model Output Statistics (MOS). Categories shown are very low IFR (brown), low IFR (dark yellow), IFR (bright yellow and bright green), marginal VFR (medium green), six statute miles (dark green) and greater than six statute miles (black). Forecasts are provided at three hour intervals out to 84 hours.

#### **ADVISORIES**

**Graphical AIRMETs** - Also known as G-AIRMETs, Graphical AIRMETs provide a graphical representation of en route advisories for adverse weather including IFR conditions and mountain obscuration, turbulence, icing and freezing level. Graphical AIRMETs are issued by the same forecasters at the Aviation Weather Center (AWC) that issue the legacy AIRMET and Area Forecast (FA). Forecasts are issued four times daily at 0245Z, 0845Z, 1445Z and



2045Z. Graphical are amended as necessary. Unlike the legacy AIRMET that is valid over a six hour period with a six hour outlook, the Graphical AIRMET consists of five snapshots valid at three hour intervals out to twelve hours. The first three Graphical AIRMET snapshots including the Initial, 3 HR and 6 HR make up the same area as included in the legacy AIRMET. **SIGMETs** - These en route advisories are issued on an as-needed basis by forecasters at the Aviation Weather Center (AWC). They include advisories for convection, nonconvective severe or extreme turbulence, non-convective severe icing, dust storms and sandstorms lowering visibility to below 3 miles and volcanic ash. When issued, these advisories are valid for a four hour period.



### WINDS ALOFT

The winds aloft section provides twodimensional graphics of winds at a multitude of altitudes from the initial time (analysis) with a lead time out to 48 hours. Standard wind barbs (direction and speed) are shown on each chart with the highest winds color contoured in knots using the legend at the bottom of the chart.

#### ICING

**Lowest Freezing Level** - Updated hourly, this includes both an analysis and forecast of the height of the lowest freezing level through the next 18 hours. The lowest freezing level is depicted at 2,000 ft increments in hundreds of feet above mean sea level (MSL) using the color scale at the bottom of the chart. Areas depicted in white consist of regions where the entire temperature profile above the surface is below 0 degrees Celsius. Hatched or





stippled areas imply there are multiple freezing levels with the color presented in the hatched areas being the lowest of the multiple freezing levels.

Icing Probability Analysis (CIP) - The Current Icing Product (CIP) combines a Rapid Refresh model forecast with the latest surface observations, visible and IR satellite, NEXRAD, lightning as well as pilot icing weather reports to describe an hourly, three-dimensional analysis of the icing environment using a calibrated probability. Probabilities are shown as percentages using the scale below. A new CIP analysis is generated hourly every 2,000 feet for altitudes from 1,000 feet MSL to FL290. Also a Maximum Icing Probability analysis is provided that is a composite of the





maximum probability of all altitudes up to and including FL300. The hourly analysis becomes available about 20 minutes past each hour. Note that this is not a forecast, but a peek in to the recent past.



**Icing Severity Analysis (CIP)** - The Current Icing Product (CIP) combines a Rapid Refresh model forecast with the latest surface observations, visible and IR satellite, NEXRAD, lightning as well as pilot icing weather reports to describe an hourly, three-dimensional analysis of the icing environment using icing intensities. CIP Severity encompasses five categories represented by shades of blue to include trace, light, moderate and heavy as shown in the legend below. Additionally, overlaid on the severity chart is an analysis of the Supercooled Large Drop (SLD) potential shown in red hatching. A new CIP analysis is

Icing severity at 15000 ft. MSL



generated hourly every 2,000 feet for altitudes from 1,000 feet MSL to FL290. Also a Maximum Icing Severity analysis is provided that is a composite of the maximum intensity for all altitudes up to and including FL300. The hourly analysis becomes

available about 20 minutes past each hour. Note that this is not a forecast, but a peek in to the recent past.



**Masked Icing Severity** > 25% (CIP) - The Current Icing Product (CIP) masked severity combines the CIP Probability and CIP Severity analyses. Shown in shades of blue are icing intensities with probabilities greater than 25 percent. Icing intensities in areas with less than or equal to 25 percent probability are masked and show up as light gray as shown in the legend below. This allows pilots to visualize the intensities for the icing environment with the highest probability. Note that Supercooled Large Drop (SLD) potential is not shown on this analysis.





**Masked Icing Severity > 50% (CIP)** - The Current Icing Product (CIP) masked severity combines the CIP Probability and CIP Severity analyses. Shown in shades of blue are icing intensities with probabilities greater than 50 percent. Icing intensities in areas with less than or equal to 50 percent probability are masked and show up as light gray as shown in the legend below. Note that Supercooled Large Drop (SLD) potential is not shown on this analysis.

Icing severity (prob>50%) at 15000 ft. MSL





**2, 3 and 6 HR Icing Severity Forecast** -The Forecast Icing Product (FIP) uses the Rapid Refresh model forecast to describe a three-dimensional forecast of the icing environment using icing intensities. FIP Severity encompasses five categories represented by shades of blue to include trace, light, moderate and heavy as shown in the legend below. Additionally, overlaid on the severity chart is a forecast of the Supercooled Large Drop (SLD) potential shown in red hatching. Forecasts are provide for 2, 3 and 6 hours.





#### TURBULENCE

**Graphical Turbulence Guidance** - The Graphical Turbulence Guidance (GTG-3) includes an analysis and forecast for both clear air turbulence (CAT) and mountain wave turbulence (MTW), as well as an (All) section that combines them, with a new forecast updated every hour. The GTG includes turbulence from 1,000' to FL450 with a vertical resolution of 2,000'. Turbulence is measured in eddy dissipation rate (EDR), which is an objective measure of atmospheric energy dissipation, with larger numbers indicating a more turbulent atmosphere.

GTG - Max clear air turbulence (1000 ft. MSL to FL500)



Eddy Dissipation Rate (EDR)

0,1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9	

#### SATELLITE

**Visible** - The satellite imagery contains national and regional satellite images from the GOES-15 (West) and GOES-13 (East) satellites. These images are updated every 15 minutes. On the visible images clouds and snow appear bright white, but oceans, lakes and trees are much dimmer. After the sun has set and before the sun has risen, these images will be totally black leaving just the geopolitical boundaries.

**Infrared** - The infrared satellite is a colorized depiction of temperature in degrees Celsius and is available during both the daytime and nighttime hours. The data measured by the satellite are calibrated and colorized according to this temperature with red shades representing warmer temperatures and blue shades representing cooler temperatures. Typically the temperature of the atmosphere decreases with increasing height. Therefore, using this





depiction can give you an idea of which clouds are high-level and which are low-level based on the cloud top temperature. Keep in mind that with low-topped clouds near the surface, the temperature of the cloud tops can be actually a warmer than the temperature of the surface. Therefore, this depicts the temperature of the surface of the earth during clear skies or the temperature of the cloud tops.

Additionally, cloud top temperatures of -15 degrees Celsius and warmer are typically dominated by liquid water. So temperatures that are in the range of yellow, pale green and sometimes light blue imply the potential for supercooled liquid water to exist in the clouds below, representing a significant airframe icing hazard.

#### **DOPPLER RADAR**

The Doppler radar static images and loops are regional/sector depictions of the national NEXRAD mosaic built from the lowest elevation angle base reflectivity data. Looped images are 10 minutes apart over the most recent one hour period. The reflectivity presented on these images has limited filtering to remove nonprecipitation returns. As a result, during the early morning and overnight hours, it is quite common to see a significant amount



of ground clutter and anomalous propagation depicted on these images and loops.

Also included is the national radar summary chart. This chart is created from what is called the Radar Coded Messages (RCMs). The RCM reflectivity data has spatial resolution of about 12 km and is updated every 30 minutes. The numbers on this image represent the maximum tops for each radar's area of coverage. Please note that some of the tops reported on this graphic are often erroneous.

#### **PILOT WEATHER REPORTS**

This includes the most recent pilot weather reports (PIREPs) of icing, turbulence and sky and weather over the conterminous U.S. using standard symbology. National and regional views are available for each of these three pilot weather report categories.



## **VIEWING AN IMAGE**

View a image full screen by tapping on its thumbnail. View a list of recentlyviewed images by tapping the **Recents** button . The full screen view supports all the standard zoom and pan gestures, as well as rotation.

Dismiss the full screen image by tapping the **Close** button at the top left.

Tap the star at the top right to add the current image as a favorite.

## **USING FAVORITE IMAGES**

View all favorite images by tapping the double star button in the dark blue tool bar above the thumbnail images area.

Tap an image in the list to view it full screen.

The favorites list can be re-ordered by tapping the **Edit** button. Once in Edit mode, a three-bar icon is displayed to the right of each image in the list. Tap-and-hold on the three bar icon until the image row appears to lift up, then drag the row to the desired location in the list.

Delete an image from the favorites list using swipe-to-delete. Or, tap the **Edit** button and then the red circle icon beside the image. Then, tap the **Delete** button.

## **SEND TO**

Tap the Send To button in the bottom-right corner while viewing an image to save, email, or copy the image to your device's clipboard. Saving the image adds it to your device's Photos app so you can view it offline.

# File & Brief

# **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

The *File & Brief* view of ForeFlight Mobile provides a quick way to enter details about a flight to depart 10 minutes from now or days in advance. The fields in the flight plan form correspond to the standard paper form, with the added ability to specify an email address to which a filing confirmation and briefing will be sent.



# BEFORE CREATING A NEW FLIGHT PLAN

You can use ForeFlight Mobile to file most flight plans with Lockheed Martin Flight Service (LMFS) or DUATS. Canadian VFR ICAO flight plans are sent directly from ForeFlight to Canadian flight services. Available flight plan types for each service are shown below:

Flight Plan Type	Lockheed Martin Flight Service	DUATS	ForeFlight
FAA/Domestic VFR	YES	YES	NO
FAA/Domestic IFR	YES	YES	NO
FAA/Domestic VFR (DC SFRA)	YES	YES	NO
ICAO VFR in US	YES	NO	NO
ICAO IFR in US	YES	NO	NO
ICAO VFR (DC SFRA)	YES		
ICAO IFR in Canada, Mexico, & to/ from US	YES	NO	NO
ICAO VFR outside of US, except Canada	YES	NO	NO
ICAO VFR from US to Canada	YES	NO	NO
ICAO VFR from Canada to US	NO	NO	YES
ICAO VFR in Canada	NO	NO	YES

To file a flight plan with LMFS, <u>sign out of your DUATS account</u> on the **More** > **Accounts** page. NOTE: All non-Canadian ICAO flight plans are filed directly with LMFS even if you have entered DUATS credentials.

The following actions are available on the File & Brief page in ForeFlight Mobile when filing a flight plan with Lockheed Martin Flight Service:

	Flight plan type (filing with LMFS)				
Action	IFR - Filed	VFR - Filed	VFR - Active		
File	ETD	ETD	n/a		
Amend	ETD -30 minutes	ETD +2 hours*	Until closed*		
Cancel	ETD -30 minutes	ETD +2 hours	n/a		
Activate	n/a	ETD +2 hours	n/a		
Close	n/a	n/a	Until closed		

\* ETD cannot be changed. If the ETA needs to be changed, amend the ETE.

**IMPORTANT:** VFR Flight Plans are only used for Search & Rescue purposes and are **not** sent to Air Traffic Control.

Flight plans can be filed with LMFS up to 27 days prior to departure. Flight plans filed with LMFS are released to ATC approximately 3 hours prior to your ETD.

Flight plans filed with DUATS can be filed up to 24 hours prior to departure. Flight plans filed with DUATS cannot be Activated, Closed, Amended or Cancelled inside of ForeFlight Mobile. However if your flight departs more than 2 hours in the future, you can sign-in to your DUATS account at <u>www.duats.com</u> to Amend or Cancel the plan.

**NOTE:** As of October 2014, pilots calling Flight Service to activate a VFR flight plan filed using ForeFlight (as well as other electronic tools) may still be asked for their pilot information, even though that information was transmitted by ForeFlight when the plan was filed. This may be especially prevalent for VFR flight plans filed in Alaska.

## **CREATING A NEW FLIGHT PLAN**

Flight plans can be created in three ways: From a route created in the *Maps* view, or by tapping the New or Copy button on the File & Brief page.

**Map**: As discussed in the <u>Maps</u> section of this guide, a new flight plan form can be started from a map-based route by tapping the **Send To** button on the Navigation Log and choosing **File & Brief**. The flight plan form will be filled in according to the route details (including speeds, times and fuel burn) and last-filed values as in a new plan.

**New**: To create a new flight plan form from scratch, tap File & Brief button at the bottom-right, then tap the New Flight Plan button in the upper-right corner. This displays a new flight plan form and automatically fills in some details by using the last filed values such as pilot name, phone number, and aircraft. The majority of the fields will be blank.

**Send To**: To use a previous flight plan form as a template for a new one, select the desired plan form from the list and press the **Send To** button in the lower-left of the plan and choose **Copy**. This creates a new flight plan form and fills in all details based on the selected plan with an updated departure time; any fields can be changed as needed.

Tapping the **Send To** button on the File & Brief page and choosing **Maps** will display the current flight plan on the Maps page. Use this option if you edit the route or altitude on plan on the File & Briefs page. Changes made on the Maps page are not automatically reflected in the plan on the FILe & Brief page, so if you make changes you will need to tap the **Send To** button on the Navigation Log and choose **File & Brief** to start a new plan with the updated details.

# CHOOSING BETWEEN FAA/DOMESTIC AND ICAO FLIGHT PLANS

ICAO flight plans are required when:

1) The flight will enter international airspace, including Oceanic airspace controlled by FAA facilities.

2) The flight expects routing or separation based on Performance Based Navigation (PBN), e.g., RNAV SIDs and STARs

3) The flight will enter Reduced Vertical Separation Minima (RVSM) airspace, e.g., FL290 or above.

4) The flight expects services based on ADS-B.

Flights that remain wholly within domestic United States airspace and do not meet any of the 4 criteria listed above can still use a FAA/Domestic flight plan.

So if you are filing a regular VFR, IFR, or non RVSM flight-level IFR flight plan, you can file using the FAA/Domestic flight plan. If you're planning to file for a GPS T-route or Q-route or to fly a GPS approach at your destination, then you can still file using the FAA/Domestic flight plan.

# **CREATING AN FAA/DOMESTIC FLIGHT PLAN**

The majority of the flight plan form has the same usage as the corresponding field on the paper form. A few items are described below in greater detail.

In the Flight Rules section at the top, the options are VFR, IFR and VFR (DC SFRA).

When VFR (DC SFRA) is selected, you need to provide an appropriate gate for SFRA entry as your departure point (when inbound to the SFRA) or the appropriate exit gate in the destination field (when outbound). Your ETE value should match when you expect to enter the SFRA (when inbound) or exit it (when outbound). If you wish to do non-towered airport pattern work within the SFRA enter + *REQ PTTN* in your remarks.

ForeFlight Mobile can store profiles for your aircraft. In the *Aircraft* section, the aircraft used for the most recently filed flight plan will be chosen by default.

Tap the *Aircraft* field to edit or change the aircraft. To change the selected aircraft for the current flight, tap on the appropriate tail number in the list of aircraft. New aircraft can also be created. See the <u>Aircraft</u> section of this guide for more details.

You can add a call sign to your flight plan by entering it in the *Call Sign (Optional)* field. When a flight plan is filed under a call sign, the call sign is transmitted to ATC in place of the aircraft's tail number, and the tail number is copied to the flight plan's remarks so as to be available to ATC. If no call sign is entered the flight plan will be filed under the aircraft's tail number.

The *Route* entry in the *Enroute* section can be as simple as DIRECT (leave blank for DIRECT routing) or as complex as you like, but note that the departure and destination airports are specified separately and thus should not be entered in the *Enroute* field.

All required fields are marked as such. Your email address is required for receiving a filing confirmation and a copy of the briefing for your flight. This email address is independent of your ForeFlight account, and you can change it at any time. If you enter a different email address than your ForeFlight account, briefings and flight plan emails will be sent to both addresses.

## **CREATING AN ICAO FLIGHT PLAN**

For details about creating an ICAO flight plan and entering the ICAO-specific aircraft information in **More > Aircraft**, refer to "Filing with ForeFlight" available in the Document catalog under ForeFlight.

## **OBTAINING A WEATHER BRIEFING**

This section pertains to the old text briefing. To read about the new, graphical briefing, see <u>ForeFlight Briefing</u>.

After defining your flight details, you can receive a weather briefing by tapping the Brief button at the bottom right. ForeFlight will request the briefing from Lockheed Martin Flight Service (or from DUATS if you entered your information on the **More** > **Accounts** > **Account Logins**) and present the briefing as a collection of logical sections.

Sections listed in bold have content for you to review; plain sections are empty. Once you have selected a section, you can use the left and right arrows at the top right to skip to the previous or next section, respectively.

Tapping the top left button (labeled with the origin and destination) takes you back to the briefing section list. Tap **File & Brief** at the top left to return to the flight plan form.

Briefings are stored on the iPad. To show a previous briefing, tap the **Briefing** button again when viewing the previously briefed flight plan.

Existing briefings can be refreshed to show the latest data. Select the desired plan form from the list at the left, tap the **Brief** button at the bottom right, and tap the **Refresh** button at the bottom left of the briefing segment list to refresh the briefing.

Briefings can only be obtained or refreshed when an active network connection is available.

# FILING YOUR FLIGHT PLAN (FAA/DOMESTIC OR ICAO)

Once your flight plan form is complete, you can file it using the **File** button at the bottom right of the form and confirming the action by pressing the **File** button on the pop-up. An active ForeFlight subscription is required to file a flight plan.

The flight plan will either be accepted and you will be notified of a successful file, or it will be rejected and ForeFlight Mobile will identify the error reported by LMFS or DUATS. If rejected, you can correct the error and re-file.

Once a flight plan has been filed, it will no longer be editable, but it can be Amended. To create a new flight plan form from the filed plan, tap the **Send To** 

button 🛄 and choose **Copy**.

## FLIGHT PLAN ACKNOWLEDGMENT NOTIFICATION

After you file your flight plan with LMFS you should receive two notifications, by email and if you have Push Notifications turned ON, directly on the device that was used to file the plan. First that device will receive a "Filing Succeeded" message, indicating that the plan was successfully filed with LMFS.



After LMFS transmits the plan to ATC (at ETD -3 hours, or immediately if your ETD is within 3 hours) and ATC acknowledges receipt of the plan, that device will receive a "ForeFlight Notification".

Under certain circumstances ForeFlight may not receive the ATC notification from LMFS; in that case, the device that filed the plan will receive a message, "ForeFlight has not yet received a notification from Flight Services indicating that ATC has acknowledged your upcoming flight from KXXX to KZZZ (N9999). Please contact Flight Services at 1-800-WX-BRIEF to check the status of your flight plan."

## **FLIGHT NOTIFICATIONS**

After filing your flight plan via Lockheed Martin Flight Service, two hours prior to your scheduled departure time ForeFlight will begin monitoring your route of flight and providing weather and other alerts relevant to your filed flight plans (requires an active Internet connection, and ForeFlight Pro or Pro Plus subscription).

ForeFlight notifies you if there are updates to: TFRs, airport/runway closed/unsafe NOTAMs, urgent PIREPs, SIGMETs, Convective SIGMETs, AIRMETs, Center Weather Advisories (CWAs), and Severe Weather Watches/Warnings that affect your filed route.

To activate the Flight Notifications, <u>Sync</u> must be ON. Then before filing the plan you must scroll down to the bottom of the flight plan on the File & Brief page and move the Flight Notifications switch to ON.

NOTE: The Flight Notification state (ON or OFF) is retained between flight plans.



Once you file a flight plan, ForeFlight will notify you of any new conditions via a red badge (showing the number of Notifications) on the File & Brief tab, and via text on the Flight plan listing on the left side of the File & Brief page.

iPad 🗢	2:54 PM	<b>√</b> 70% <b>■</b>
Edit	File & Brief	New Flight Plan
TODAY	FLIGHT NOTIFICATIONS	
KSSI to KHOU (VFR) 11/13/14 145 kts at 10,500' MSL in SR22S Depart Today, 3:15 PM for 06:35 ETE DIRECT ICAO - Filed	8 New Flight Notifications 8 Total	View Alerts
8 New Flight Notifications	STATUS	
KSSI to KHOU (VFR) 11/13/14	Filed via	Lockheed Martin
Depart Today, 3:15 PM for 06:35 ETE	Status	Filed
Canceled	Date Filed	Nov 13, 2:52 PM CST
LAST 7 DAYS	ROUTE	
KSSI to X04 (IFR) 11/8/14	Filed Route	DIRECT
Depart Nov 08, 12:50 PM for 01:07 ETE > 2857100/08124290	TYPE	
Not filed	Flight Rules	VFR
KPDK to KSSI (IFR)         11/8/14           145 kts at 9,000' MSL in SR22S         11/8/14           Depart Nov 08, 11:40 AM for 01:35 ETE         >           PDK         >	Flight Type	G
	Plan Type	ICAO
Not filed	AIRCRAFT	
KPGA to KSSI (VFR) 11/8/14 145 kts at 11,500' MSL in SR22S Depart Nov 08, 9:20 AM for 10:06 FTE	Tail	SR22S
By Departure By Created	<u>ٿ</u>	Brief Cancel Amend Activate
Airports Maps	Plates Documents Imagery File &	18 ScratchPad More

Select the Flight Plan in the left column, then tap the "View Alerts" button at the top of the flight plan to view a summary of the alerts. A thumbnail of each alert's graphic is shown to the left of the alert.

iPad 🗢	11:31				<b>≁</b> 100% <b>■</b>	
Edit		File & Brief			New Flight Plan	
TODAY	Close	0 New Flight Notifications	Mark All As Re	ad		
2LS0 to 2700000/09000000 (IFR) 160 kts at 10,000' MSL in N12345 Depart Today, 09:55 for 01:12 FTE	NEW FLIGH	IT NOTIFICATIONS			View Alerts	
HRVLC TBDRG Not filed	OTHER FLIG	GHT NOTIFICATIONS				
LAST 7 DAYS	$\nabla$	AIRPORT RUNWAY RESTRICTION	Jun 11, 12:31 CDT			
KPTN to KGPT (IFR)		International, Gulfport, MS (KGPT)		2	Lockheed Martin	
160 kts at 10,000' MSL in N12345 Depart Jun 11, 12:40 for 00:51 ETE	2				Filed	
DIRECT Filed		Area of thunderstorms moving from 180° at 5 knots. Tops to flight level 450.	Jun 11, 12:31 CD1	>.	Jun 11, 12:31 CDT	
KAUS to KHYI (IFR) 160 kts at 4,000' MSL in N12345	10-40-40 M				DIRECT	
DIRECT Filed		KGPT A679/2015 Gulfport-Biloxi International, Gulfport, MS (KGPT)	Jun 11, 12:31 GD1	>		
KMSY to KHUM (IEB)					IFR	
160 kts at 39,000' MSL in N12345 Depart Jun 09, 14:30 for 00:12 ETE	$\overline{\mathbb{C}}$	AIRPORT RUNWAY RESTRICTION	Jun 11, 12:31 CDT			
DIRECT Not filed		International, Gulfport, MS (KGPT)		>	N12345	
KGTU to KAUS (IFR)	A	HAC			PA32	
160 kts at 39,000' MSL in N12345 Depart Jun 09, 13:55 for 00:11 ETE DIRECT	$\Box$	No summary information available.	Jun 11, 12:31 CD1	*	/G	
By Departure By Cre	ated	Ш			Brief	
🎸 🗘	0			2.m		
Airports Mai		Plates Documents Imagery	File & Brief	ScratchPads	More	

Tap an individual alert to view all details, including the full-size graphic. Tap the "Mark All As Read" button to remove the badge on the File & Brief tab.



# AMENDING OR CANCELING A LMFS FLIGHT PLAN

After you have filed a flight plan with LMFS, tap the "Amend" button at the bottom of the File & Brief page to make changes to the plan.

iPad ♥	6:22 AM	🕈 98% 🚃	Pad 🗢	6:22 AM	🕈 98% 🚃
Edit	File & Brief	New Flight Plan	Edit	File & Brief	New Flight Plan
TODAY	STATUS		TODAY	Form Type	ICAO
KMIC to KOSH (JFR) 3/10/14 145 kts at 7,000 MSL in N101FF Depart Today, 8/25 AM for 01:13 ETE > NIGIE V415 AU V5S STE LIMME ICAO - Filed	Filed via	Lockheed Martin	KMIC to KOSH (IFR) 3/10/14 145 kts at 7,000 MSL in N101FF Depart Today, 8/25 AM for 01:13 ETE > NGIG V413 EAU V55 STE LIMME ICAO - Filed (amending)	Flight Rules	IFR
	Status	Filed		Flight Type	G
	Date Filed	Mar 10, 6:15 AM PDT		AIRCRAFT	
LAST 7 DAYS	ROUTE		LAST 7 DAYS	Alimente	N10455 (220/0)
KSJC to KPOC (IFR) 3/5/14	Filed Route NIGIE V41	3 EAU V55 STE LIMME >	KSJC to KPOC (IFR) 3/5/14	Aircraft	NTOTEP (582/6)
Depart Mar 05, 6:55 PM for 01:57 ETE	TYPE		Depart Mar 05, 6:55 PM for 01:57 ETE	True Airspeed	145
Filed	Flight Rules	IFB	Filed	Airspeed Units	Knots
SOGGI to KVCV (IFR) 3/5/14	Flight Type	G	SOGGI to KVCV (IFR) 3/5/14	Count	1
Depart Mar 05, 6:50 PM for 00:24 ETE	Plan Tune	1040	Depart Mar 05, 6:50 PM for 00:24 ETE	DEPARTURE	
APLES 3440070/11530 SCCAI SUZZO Not filed	нан туре	IGAO	APLES 3440070/11530 SCCAT SUZZQ Not filed	Airport	KMIC
OLDER	AIRCHAFT		OLDER	-	T
KFCI to KRDU (IFR) 2/5/14	Tail	N101FF	KFCI to KRDU (IFR) 2/5/14	Time	Today, 8:25 AM PD1
145 kts at 8,000' MSL in N99999 Depart Feb 05, 1:55 PM for 01:25 ETE >	Model Code	C82	145 kts at 8,000' MSL in N99999 Depart Feb 05, 1:55 PM for 01:25 ETE >>	Souls Aboard	1
FVX Canceled	ICAO Equipment	G	FVX Canceled	ENROUTE	
KFCI to KROU (IFR)         2/4/14           145 kts at 0,000° MSL in N101FF         Depart Feb 04, 4:15 PM for 01:20 ETE         >           CVI         Canceled         >	ICAO Surveillance	с	KECI to KRDU (IFR) 2/4/14	Route	NIGIE V413 EAU V55 STE JIMME
	Wake Turbulence	L	145 kts at 6,000' MSL in N101FF Depart Feb 04, 4:15 PM for 01:20 ETE 3	Altitude	7000
	Color	W/B/GD	CVI Canceled	Time Enroute	h 13m
KFCI to KRDU (FFP) 2/4/14 145 kts at 8,000' MSL in N99999 Depart Feb 04,4:00 PM for 01:20 ETE > CVI Filed	Home Base	KFCI	KECI to KROU (IEB) 2/4/14	Evel Aboard	6b 00m
	Airspeed	145	145 kts at 8,000' MSL in N99999 Depart Feb 04, 4:00 PM for 01:20 ETE >>	- Contraction -	an oom
	Alarge and Holds	Kente	CVI Filed	Other Flight Info	) items
	Airspeed Units	Knots		Status	
	Count	31		REMARKS	
Bu Departure Bu Created	DEPARTURE		Pu Departure Dri Created	Sunplement	a comparison and unitable to ATC
oy ceparture oy created			of reparate		Priscard Changes Pris Changes
Airporta Maps Plates Do	Currents Imagery File & Brief	ScratchPad More	Airports Maps Plates C	Te Imageny	E 2 More

Once you have made your changes, tap the "File Changes" button to file the amended plan, or tap "Discard Changes" if you don't want to make changes to the plan.

To cancel a plan, tap the red "Cancel" button.

IFR flight plans can be amended or canceled until 30 minutes **before** the filed ETD. VFR flight plans can be amended or cancelled up to 2 hours **after** the filed ETD.
# ACTIVATING OR CLOSING A LMFS VFR FLIGHT PLAN

Once you have filed a VFR flight plan with LMFS and you are ready to depart, tap the "Activate" button on the File & Brief page to view the confirmation dialog. This lets your know the departure time that will be logged with Flight Services, as well as your ETA based on your ETE and the activation time.

To activate the flight plan directly with Lockheed Martin Flight Service, which is equivalent to calling Flight Service to activate a VFR plan, tap "Yes".

nd 🗢	6:22 AM	-4 98%	
dit	File & Brief	New Flight Plan	
TODAY	STATUS		
KCXY to KPKB (VFR) 3/12/14	Filed via	Lockheed Martin	
Depart Today, 9:05 PM for 01:50 ETE	Status	Filed	
CAO - Filed	Date Filed	Mar 12, 8:31 PM PDT	
AST 7 DAYS	ROUTE		
KMIC to KOSH (IFR) 3/10/14 145 kts at 7.000' MSL in N101FF	Filed Route	DIRECT	
Depart Mar 10, 12:35 PM for 01:13 ETE >	TYPE		
Canceled	Flight Rules	VFR	Are
KMIC to KOSH (IFR) 3/10/14 145 kts at 7,000' MSL in N101FF	Flight Type	G	vou
Depart Mar 10, 8:25 AM for 01:13 ETE > VIGIE V413 EAU V55 STE LIMME	Plan Type	ICAO	don
GAU - Ganceled	AIRCRAFT		deb
(SJC to KPOC (IFR) 3/5/14 145 kts at 9,000' MSL in N101FF	Tail	N101FF	and t
SJC V485 ROM V137 PMD Filed	Model Code	C82	5
	ICAO Equipment	G	-
145 kts at 6,000' MSL in N101FF Decart Mar 05, 6:50 PM for 00:24 ETE	ICAO Surveillance	С	
APLES 3440070/11530 SCCAT SUZZO Not filed	Wake Turbulence	L	
DLDER	Color	W/B/GD	
KFCI to KRDU (IFR) 2/5/14	Home Base	KFCI	
Depart Feb 05, 1:55 PM for 01:25 ETE >	Airspeed	145	
Canceled	Airspeed Units	Knots	
KFCI to KRDU (IFR) 2/4/14 145 kts at 6.000' MSL in N101EE	Count	31	
Depart Feb 04, 4:15 PM for 01:20 ETE	DEPARTURE		
By Departure By Created	년 Briel	Cancel Amer 1. Activate	



VFR flight plans must be activated within 2 hours of the filed ETD. If it is more than 2 hours after the filed ETD, you must re-file the flight plan with a revised ETD.

After your VFR plan is activated, the "Close" button will be displayed for that plan. Active VFR plans can only be closed in ForeFlight Mobile if 1) the plan was Filed **and** Activated using ForeFlight Mobile, and 2) your device is connected to the Internet.

**IMPORTANT:** After you land, or if you decide to cancel the flight after activating, be sure to tap "Close" to close the activated flight plan using ForeFlight Mobile, or call Flight Service to close the activated flight plan.

# CLOSE VFR FLIGHT PLAN "PUSH" ALERTS

If you activated a VFR flight plan using ForeFlight Mobile and have not closed the plan 20 minutes after your calculated ETA (Departure time + ETE), ForeFlight will send a "push" notification to your devices reminding you to close your flight plan. You can close the plan using the "Close" button on the File & Brief page, or by calling 1-800-WX-BRIEF.

If the plan still has not been closed 30 minutes after your calculated ETA (Departure time + ETA) LMFS will send ForeFlight an "OVERDUE" status update, and ForeFlight will then send another "push" notification to your devices reminding you to close your flight plan immediately.

# AMENDING OR CANCELING A DUATS FLIGHT PLAN

Once a DUATS flight plan has been filed using ForeFlight Mobile, it **cannot** be Amended, Cancelled or Closed using ForeFlight Mobile. However if you have entered your own DUATS sign-in credentials in ForeFlight Mobile at **More** > **Accounts** AND the flight departs in more than 2 hours, you can modify or cancel the flight plan by signing-in to your DUATS account at <u>www.duats.com</u>.

# **MANAGING FLIGHT PLAN FORMS**

When viewing the listing of flight plan forms, you may wish to remove some to keep the length of the list under control. To remove a flight plan form, swipe your finger from right to left across the entry, then tap the red "Delete" button. This will not close or cancel a filed plan, but will remove its details from ForeFlight Mobile.

# **FLIGHT ALERTS**

Flight Alerts (IFR flight plans only, requires a ForeFlight Pro or Pro Plus subscription) notify you when ATC issues an expected route for an IFR flight plan filed using ForeFlight Mobile.

When updated expected route information becomes available from ATC, ForeFlight's servers send a notification of that route information directly to your devices. ForeFlight also sends you



a message if our servers do not receive an expected route for your flight from ATC. ForeFlight's servers also send you an email with the expected route. NOTE: if you are a member of a multi-pilot account, the notification is sent only to the device that filed the flight plan.





You can also view Expected Route Flight Alerts in the iOS Notification Center, which is accessed by swiping down from very top of the screen with a single finger.

When you tap on the notification or the link in the email, a pop-up containing the expected route appears on the screen. Tap **Yes** to load the route into the NavLog. When the expected route is loaded, the flight plan form (on File & Brief) is updated with the expected route and a link to FlightAware for flight tracking.



**IMPORTANT:** ForeFlight cannot parse Expected Routes that do not originate at a Fix (e.g., "Radar Vectors to V17..."). If your Expected Route doesn't originate at a Fix, ForeFlight plots a route "direct-to" the next Fix on the route. The "direct-to" route may differ significantly from the instructions you will be given by ATC. After loading an Expected Route, verify that all legs are displayed correctly and be prepared to follow ATC instructions for legs not originating at a Fix (e.g., "Radar Vectors to V17...")

# **ForeFlight Briefing**

# **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

ForeFlight Briefing provides a graphical and translated weather briefing in place of the older wall-of-text briefing. The information it presents is the same as the text briefing and comes from the same source (Lockheed Martin Flight Services), but the layout and navigation have been overhauled to improve readability and ease of comprehension. You can enable or disable ForeFlight Briefing in More > Settings > File & Brief.



# **NAVIGATING THE BRIEFING**

ForeFlight Briefing is organized into sections that can be accessed by tapping the Menu button in the upper-left corner of the screen, or by swiping right. This opens a sidebar with a summary of the briefing at the top, followed by the list of sections. Sections with a carat next to them contain subsections which can be accessed by tapping the section to expand it. Tapping on a section with no subsections will take you to that page of the briefing. Orange dots indicate that a section (or one of its subsections) has not been viewed. Swipe left or tap the "X" button next to the sidebar to hide the menu.

At the bottom or bottom left of each page is the "Next" button, which shows what the next page in the briefing is. Tap it to move to the next page, or tap the smaller "Back" button to its left to move back one page.

# **TRANSLATED TEXT VS RAW TEXT**

Most pages in the briefing allow you to view both the raw text of the briefing and the translation of that text. On split-screen pages like those in the Adverse Conditions section or the Synopsis page, you can view the raw text by tapping "Show Raw Text" at the bottom of the right column. On full-screen pages like the METARs, TAFs, or

NOTAMs pages, a "Plain Text" slider at the top right of the page allows you to toggle the text between raw and translated. The position of this slider is retained between pages in the same briefing.

Ceiling below 1,000 feet/visibility below 3 statute miles
precipitation. Conditions continuing beyond 0300Z
through 0900Z.

SHOW RAW TEXT





# **BRIEFING SECTIONS**

## **Adverse Conditions**

The Adverse Conditions section includes important safety advisories such as TFRs, closed/unsafe NOTAMs, and AIRMETs and SIGMETs.

These pages are laid out in a split-screen view: on the left is a list of selectable advisories with basic information about each, and on the right is more detailed information about the selected advisory, including the translated text and a map showing the advisory against your route of flight.



The time at which the advisory is active is shown at the top, and below that is the time interval during which you will pass the advisory. This interval is color-coded based on how close your passing time is to the time at which the advisory is active: Green means the advisory won't be active during or near your passing time, Orange means the advisory will be active near your passing time, and Red means the advisory will be active during time.

## **Synopsis**

The Synopsis page provides an overview of the weather trends for each geographical area through which your route passes. As with the Adverse Conditions section, you can select each area's forecast from a list on the left, and read the translated text of that forecast on the right. At the top of the right column is the most recent Surface Analysis Chart for the Continental US published by the Hurricane Prediction Center that day.



#### **Current Weather**

The Current Weather section includes information on current conditions along your route.

The METARs page shows the most recent METARs issued for the airports along your route. At the top of the page is a map showing your route and colored bubbles indicating the flight category at each airport. The <u>coloring system</u> for the bubbles is the same as what is used in the Flight Category layer on the Maps view.

Below the map is the list of current METARs issued for each airport. You can view previous METARs issued for each airport by tapping the clock icons next to each flight condition bubble.



## Forecasts

The Forecasts section includes information on forecasted conditions along your route.

The Area Forecasts page is similar to the Synopsis page, but provides forecasted weather trends for each geographical area through which your route passes. It also includes the most recent 6 HR Prog chart at the top of the right column.

The TAFs page displays TAFs for every airport that issues them along your route. Like the METARs page, it includes a map at the top showing your route and flight categories that correspond to the TAFs that will be valid for each airport during your passing time.

Below the map is a list of TAFs that will be valid at or near the time you pass each airport.



Highlighted TAFs will be valid at the time of your passing, which is shown in a box on the left. If a TAF will be valid within an hour of your passing, but not during your passing, the time difference between when that TAF is valid and your time of passing is shown on the left, with an arrow pointing at the TAF. These numbers can be positive or negative. For example, if a new TAF becomes valid 29 minutes after I pass an airport, that time difference is shown next to the TAF, as in the screenshot above. This feature is meant to let you know when weather might take a turn for the worse near your passing time.

#### **NOTAMs**

The NOTAMs section includes all the NOTAMs for your flight, apart from the closed/unsafe NOTAMs, which are found in the Adverse Conditions section.

Nearly all of these pages have the same layout, with a map showing your route at the top and the NOTAMs below. The only exception is the Enroute Obstruction NOTAMs page, which has a table at the top showing the total number of obstructions along your route, and how many of them are within 500 feet, 1000 feet, or beyond 1000 feet of your filed altitude, and how many have an unknown MSL altitude.

#### Miscellaneous

The Miscellaneous section includes any NHC bulletins that have been issued, as well as a page showing three days of convective outlooks issued by the Storm Prediction Center.

# **ScratchPads**

# **ABOUT THE DESIGN**

ScratchPad lets you choose from six different Scratch Pad templates to quickly record useful information. Any changes you make to a ScratchPad are automatically Sync'd to any other iPads signed-in to your account (ScratchPads are not currently available on the iPhone).

# **OPEN A SCRATCHPAD**

Tap the "+" button (upper-right) or "+ NEW SCRATCHPAD" rectangle to open the ScratchPad template chooser, or tap an existing ScratchPad thumbnail to open it.



# SCRATCHPAD TEMPLATES

When creating a new ScratchPad page, there are six templates to choose from:

DRAW: Freehand drawing using the selected Pen type & color.

TYPE: Text ScratchPad for typing using the on-screen keyboard.

GRID: Freehand drawing with underlying grid.

CRAFT: For IFR pilots: Cleared-to, Route, Altitude, Frequency, Transponder.

ATIS: Fields for ATIS information using freehand drawing.

PIREP: Fields for required and optional PIREP information using freehand drawing.



# CHANGE PEN SIZE, COLOR, OPACITY

Tap the **Pen Settings** button at the top-left to change the size of the pen used for drawing on the ScratchPad. Choose the Color, Opacity and Thickness as desired.

Close 📒 5 g	x -	Sc
	<b>`</b>	
	Ink	
Color		>
Fill Color		>
Opacity		90%
Thickness	-0	5 рх

IMPORTANT: Leave Fill Color as transparent (white background with a red slash)

# **UNDO/REDO**

While entering information on a ScratchPad, tap the Undo button one or more times to undo recent changes. Tap the Redo button one or more time to redo changes that were recently undone.



# **CLEAR SCRATCHPAD CONTENT**

When viewing a ScratchPad, tap the **Clear** button near the top-right to clear all information you have entered on the ScratchPad. A confirmation window will appear to confirm that you really want to clear everything.

# EDIT A SCRATCHPAD NAME

The default name for a ScratchPad is the date and time that the ScratchPad was created or last edited.



To rename a ScratchPad, close any ScratchPad so you're viewing the main ScratchPad page. Tap the "Edit" button in the upper-left corner of the screen, then tap the text you would like to edit in the blue area at the bottom of the ScratchPad. Type the new name, then tap "Done" in the upper left corner or on the keyboard.

# **REPOSITION SCRATCHPAD THUMBNAILS**

To change the position of ScratchPads thumbnails, tap the "Edit" button in the upper-left corner of the screen, then touch-hold on a ScratchPad thumbnail and drag it to the new position. Tap "Done" when you have finished repositioning the ScratchPad thumbnails.

# SEND A SCRATCHPAD

Tap Send-To button to send a PDF copy of a ScratchPad via email or Message.



# **DELETE A SCRATCHPAD**

From the main ScratchPads page, tap the "Edit" button (upper left) then tap the "X" button in the upper left corner of the thumbnail of the ScratchPad you want to delete.

**IMPORTANT:** ScratchPads are deleted immediately when you tap the "X".

Or tap the "Delete All" button in the upper right to Delete All ScratchPads, then tap the button to confirm deletion.

# More

The *More* view provides access to account info, application settings, aircraft, user waypoints, and the *About* view. Tap the options on the left to view each of these different sub-views.

# **DOWNLOADS**

## **About the Design**

The *Downloads* view lets you keep ForeFlight Mobile up to date with the latest airport data, diagrams, procedures, and charts. Select the data you want to download, then come back to the whenever new data is available. Look for the red number on the "More" tab, and the "Downloads" view to see when new data is available. All the data you download is available offline, whether you're up in the air or just away from an Internet connection.



Scrollable Downloads list

## **Delta Downloads**

ForeFlight Mobile 7.0 introduced Delta Downloads, which after the first download of "full" data for the selected geographies, automatically downloads only the changes in following months. This provides for up to a 70% reduction in download time. Delta

Downloads include terminal procedures, taxi charts, IFR and VFR charts, FAA A/FD, and Canada Flight Supplement data.

Prior to ForeFlight Mobile 7.0, the app downloaded only the parts of the seamlessly-stitched charts that were inside the borders of the states you selected in More > Downloads > United States. The charts for the selected states then all had to be downloaded each data cycle.

With Delta Downloads when you select a state for download in More > Downloads, if a chart crosses a state border, then the whole of that chart will be downloaded. For example North Dakota is covered by the Billings and Twin Cities VFR Sectionals, so ForeFlight Mobile will now download both of those charts if you select North Dakota.

South Dakota is also covered by the Billings and Twin Cities, as well as Cheyenne and Omaha VFR Sectionals. So selecting South Dakota will download all 4 Sectionals. Or if you previously had selected North Dakota, adding South Dakota will add just Cheyenne and Omaha VFR Sectionals.



## **Grouped Downloads**

Delta Downloads groups downloads by state, resulting in less clutter on the Downloads page while also allowing you to expand the states to see the individual

charts. States with a caret  $\stackrel{>}{\sim}$  next to them can be expanded and retracted by tapping the caret.

Downloaded charts that cross states that are not "subscribed" to, such as charts downloaded with Pack, are stored in a group called "Packed and Unselected Regions". This makes it easy to locate and delete these charts when they are no longer needed and device memory is limited.

Pad 🌩 U		10:16 AM Downloads	<b>4</b> \$ 92% <b>■</b> }	
Downloads	<b>0</b> >	VFR CHARTS		
Accounts	>	<ul> <li>Packed and Unselected Regions 3 downloaded.</li> </ul>	0	
+ Aircraft	>	> Louisiana 4 downloaded.	0	
🛄 Logbook	>	<ul> <li>New Mexico 4 downloaded. 1 available.</li> </ul>	61 MB	
A Weight & Balance	>	Albuquerque Sectional	<b>0</b>	Blue arrow =
🔅 Settings	5	Denver Sectional	0	not yet
User Waypoints	2	El Paso Sectional	0	downloaded
Track Logs	>	Phoenix Sectional		
🗰 Devices	5	Apr 30, 2015 - Oct 15, 2015	0	Green check
About		Wichita Sectional Jan 8, 2015 - Jul 23, 2015	0	mark =
		<ul> <li>Texas</li> <li>9 downloaded, 1 available.</li> </ul>	0 61 MB	already
		Albuquerque Sectional	0 61 MB	downloaded
		Brownsville Sectional Nov 13, 2014 - Aug 20, 2015	0	
		Dallas-Ft Worth Sectional Mar 5, 2015 - Sep 17, 2015	0	<b>.</b>
		Dallas-Ft Worth TAC Mar 5, 2015 - Sep 17, 2015	0	Red badge
		El Paso Sectional Feb 5, 2015 - Jul 23, 2015	0	= number of
		Download Pause	Delete	downloads
<b>نه</b>	Ð	مرد <u>ا</u> ا		pending

Because charts may cross multiple state borders, the same chart may appear under multiple state listings. In the example above, the Albuquerque Sectional is downloaded for both New Mexico and Texas.

## Select Data to Download

When you first install the app, visit *Downloads* and select the data you'll need to bring with you. In *Download Settings* at the top, tap on the country in which you'll be flying. A view will slide in with the available data types for the country listed at the

top and an ON/OFF toggle switch next to each one.

Decide on the appropriate data for your type of flying and toggle it to **ON**. VFR pilots will need *Taxi Diagrams & A/FD* and *VFR Charts*, but will not need *Terminal Procedures* or any IFR Charts. IFR pilots will also want terminal procedures along with low and/or high enroute charts.

Below the data types is a list of all regions in the country with available data. Tap on a region to select it - a check mark appears on the right and the row will be highlighted in yellow. To deselect it, tap again and the check mark disappears and the row will no longer be highlighted. U.S. pilots will want to select all of the states in which they regularly fly.

lad ≑		3-58 PM Downloads	United States	+ i 92% Clear
🖲 Downloads 🛛 🚺	<b>45</b> >	Taxi Diagrams a	nd A/FD	
L Accounts	×	Terminal Proced	lures	
Aircraft	>	VFR Charts		0
		IFR Low Charts		0
Logbook	2	IFR High Charts		0
Weight & Balance	>	IFR Planning / C	cean Charts	0
🗘 Settings	>	Helicopter Char	ts	0
User Waypoints	>	High Resolution	Terrain	0
P Track Logs	5	World Aeronauti	ical Charts	
Devices		UNITED STATES		1.08
e Devices	5	Alaska		4 GB
J About	2	Arizona		768 MB 🖌
		Arkansas		502 MB 🧹
		California		1 GB 🗸
		Colorado		975 MB 🗸
		Connecticut		486 MB
		Delaware		517 MB
		Dist. Of Columb	ia	602 MB 🖌
		Florida		732 MB 🖌
		Georgia		876 MB 🖌
		Gulf of Mexico		1 GB 🗸

After you have finished selecting your regions, tap the **<Downloads** button in the top menu bar to go back to *Downloads*.

New listings with all of the data types and regions that you selected are displayed. For example, if you had toggled *Taxi Diagrams and A/FD* to ON and selected Texas and Louisiana, you'd see a table titled *Taxi Diagrams and A/FD* with the Texas and Louisiana diagrams. A blue arrow next to each region indicates that it is available to download. A green checkmark next to each region indicates that it has been downloaded.

If you'd like to download additional data types or choose new regions, go back into the *Download Settings* at the top. Continuing our example, if you were to set *Terminal Procedures* to **ON** and also select *Oklahoma*, the *Downloads* screen would add Oklahoma to the list of Airport Diagrams available for download and show a new *Terminal Procedures* table with Texas, Louisiana, and Oklahoma.

Downloads

#### **Downloading Data**

Tap the blue arrow to download an individual region, or tap the blue **Download** button at the bottom of the screen to start downloading all of the data, two to four items at a time. You can stop the download at any time by tapping the **Pause** button. If you stop in the middle of a download, don't worry - it will automatically resume where it left off later.

When your download has finished, you'll see a green check mark on the right side. When all of the downloads have completed, the blue **Download** button at the bottom becomes disabled. All the data you downloaded can be used offline - you're now ready to fly!

**Tip:** if at all possible, use a *Wi-Fi* connection for these downloads. Downloads over the cellular network are much slower and, depending on your mobile contract, can result in bandwidth fees.

The new data for the next data cycle is generally made available to download 5-7 days before the effect date of the next data cycle. During that time, tapping the blue **Download** button will download data for both the current data cycle and the future data cycle.

Touch-hold on the blue **Download** button to choose to download only the Current data cycle data, or only the Future data cycle data.



## Downloading in the Background

Background downloading is currently available on devices running iOS 6 or later. However iOS 6 and later may halt a batch of background downloads before they are complete, especially if a large amount of data is being downloaded. Additionally, downloading will automatically stop if it was started when on a WiFi connection and the WiFi signal is lost. A download batch that was started when on a cell-data connection will not continue in the background.

A Notification Center alert notification will be shown on the screen once the downloads are complete (or if they fail for any reason).

## **Keeping Current**

New data is available every 28 days for diagrams, procedures, and VFR charts, and every 56 days for IFR enroute charts. A few days before the current data will expire, you'll see a red badge with a number appear on the **Downloads** button. This is the number of data downloads available for the next data cycle. When you see the red badge, it's time to download new data.

To download the new data, go to the *Downloads* view and tap the big blue **Download** button at the bottom. All data you've selected will queue up and download. If you don't already have a region downloaded or it's expired, then the new data will be used by the app immediately. If you already have current data for the region and you're downloading the new data a few days in advance, ForeFlight Mobile will save it on your device but keep using the current data.

The first time you start the app after the current data expires, the new data starts being used and the old data is deleted. This data cycle changeover happens automatically.

## **Deleting Data Downloads**

All data downloads can be deleted by tapping the **Delete** button at the bottom of the *Downloads* view. The option is given to



delete *All* data or just *Expired* data. Expired data is deleted automatically but for performance reasons, may not disappear immediately upon expiration. After updating to ForeFlight Mobile 7.0 or later, you can delete older non-Map Touch enabled charts by tapping Delete and choosing **Delete Legacy Charts**.

To delete an individual download, for example if a region has been downloaded that is no longer needed, swipe-to-delete the data row. Slide your finger from right to left across the entry you wish to remove and a red **Delete** button pops up. Tap on the button to remove the download. If you never want to download data for this region again, be sure to remove it from the list of regions that ForeFlight keeps track of for you by unchecking it in the *Download Settings* view.

Deleting an individual chart that appears under multiple states will remove it from all the states that it appears under. If a state includes charts present in other states, swiping to delete that state will display a pop-up to choose to delete only the charts that are unique to that state, or to delete all of its charts including those that appear under other states. If a state has only "unique" charts, no pop-up appears.

# A Quick Tour of the Data Available for Download

✤ Airport and Nav Database is an international A/FD with over 27,000 airports and NAVAIDS from 220 countries. This data is used in the Airports view (frequencies, runways, hours, FBOs, etc) and in the Maps view (locations, routes, NAVAIDS, airspaces), and includes data used in the Aeronautical data layer.

Business Directory contains the information about FBOs and services at airports.

North American Obstacles are FAA-provided towers, bridges, etc. These are shown as markers on the Map view when enabled.

✤ Worldwide Terrain is the low-resolution terrain data used to add terrain features to the base map via the switch in Maps Settings. This map provides global coverage and is only available if downloaded.

✤ Taxi Diagrams and A/FD contains thumbnail diagrams with FBO locations for over 1,200 worldwide airports and taxi diagrams for U.S. airports. These are displayed at the top of an airport in the *Airports* view. Additionally, A/FD pages for that region are included. These are displayed in the lower portion of the *Airports* view.

✤ Terminal procedures and approach plates for U.S. airports or Canadian airports, viewable in the *Procedures* tab of an airport in the *Airports* view.

✤ VFR, IFR High, and IFR Low Charts (United States) contains FAA seamless sectionals and enroute charts of the U.S. and southern Canada for use in *Maps*.

VNC Charts (Canada) contains Nav Canada seamless VNC and VFR Terminal Area (VTA) charts.

IFR High, and IFR Low Charts (Canada) contain Nav Canada seamless enroute charts of Canada and the Atlantic ocean.

Helicopter Charts - US Helicopter charts for 9 major metro areas (downloaded when switch is ON and containing state is selected) and US Gulf of Mexico VFR and IFR Helicopter charts (downloaded when Gulf of Mexico is selected).

★ High Resolution Terrain (ForeFlight Mobile Pro or Pro Plus only) contains high-resolution terrain data used for the Terrain map layer, Hazard Advisor<sup>™</sup>, and Synthetic Vision. Documents are updated via this Downloads view once added to a binder in the Documents view.

Approximately 8GB of data is available for download each month in the continental United States, and 2GB in Alaska.

**Note:** It isn't necessary to have all the data downloaded to make the app function properly. The downloads are only required for in-cockpit (or offline) use. Most pilots will download the states they will be flying through and leave other states alone if they are not flying there. If plans change, you can just grab the additional states in a few minutes of downloading. Downloading all items for all states can be unnecessarily time consuming - particularly if there are items you're likely to only reference when you're on the ground with an Internet connection.

## **Preflight Download Check**

**Remember**: If it's not downloaded, you're not going to see it in flight.

Before your flight, make sure you have the necessary data downloaded:

Use the <u>Pack</u> feature to automatically download relevant METARs, TAFs, AIR/ SIGMETs, TFRs, Fuel prices and Airport NOTAMs.

✤ Go to Settings for your iPad and switch Airplane Mode ON. This will keep the app from retrieving data over the Internet, simulating the condition in flight.

#### Launch ForeFlight Mobile

Tap More and then Downloads and ensure there is a green check mark next to each region where you'll be flying.

Tap Airports and search for each airport on your route. If you're flying IFR, make sure there is a green "saved" mark next to each procedure.

✤ Tap Maps and search for each airport on your route. Toggle between VFR, IFR Low, and IFR High, panning around each chart to ensure that it is downloaded properly on your device. Make sure to zoom into the airports you will be flying to and ensure that the charts are downloaded.

## **Troubleshooting Downloads**

ForeFlight hosts all of the data for downloads on a network of servers located across the United States and around the world. When you start a download, the data comes from the server that is closest to you in order to provide fast and reliable downloads.

Depending on the amount of data you are downloading, download time can be considerable. If downloading all items for the USA, 8-10 GB of data will be

downloaded. Even on a fast Wi-Fi connection, this will take a significant amount of time.

ForeFlight *strongly recommends* that you only download data for regions you will fly over or near. This will save a significant time and disk space.

Given the nature of networks and the large amount of data transferred every month, connection errors can occur. If a download fails, the app will automatically retry a few times. If you see a red error message on the download, that means the retry attempts did not work and you will need to restart the download for that particular item.

Try these troubleshooting tips:

Enable Diagnostic Logs - in More > Settings, turn Enable Diagnostic Logs ON to save a log file of your download attempt. Then try the download again. If the download doesn't work, make sure that your Mail client is set-up with an email address that can send message. Then in ForeFlight Mobile, tap More > Settings then tap the word "Settings" in the header area at the top of the page, 3 times in quick succession. This creates a diagnostic email pre-addressed to the ForeFlight Pilot Support Team at team@foreflight.com. Send that email along with an explanation of your download difficulty and we will investigate.

Try downloading on another network - if you're using your home Wi-Fi, try a download over a different Wi-Fi hotspot or, in a pinch, over 3G/4G.

✤ Update the firmware on your router - some older Wi-Fi routers are not compatible with the iPad. Visit your manufacturer's website to see if there is a firmware update available.

Reboot your iPad by pressing and holding the button on the top of the iPad. A red slider appears on the screen - swipe where indicated to shut down your device. Wait a few seconds, then press the button again to start it back up. Once it has finished starting up, try the downloads again.

✤ Double check Download Settings to ensure the proper regions and data types are still selected.

# ACCOUNTS

## **About the Design**

The *Accounts* view shows the status of your ForeFlight subscription and allows you to purchase a new subscription or renew your existing subscription.

If you're setting up a new device or retiring an old one, use *Accounts* to sign in and out of your ForeFlight account.



## **Viewing your Active Subscription**

The table at the top of Accounts shows the status of your account. If you're a trial user, it shows the day you started using the app and when your trial will expire. If you've already purchased a subscription, it shows the day you placed your order and when you need to renew.

A valid subscription is required to continue using the app.

If your expiration date is not correct, then you need to sign in to your ForeFlight account (see below). Apple does not provide us a consistent method to automatically detect when you start using a new device, so ForeFlight Mobile won't recognize your subscription until you sign in. Also, subscription information can be lost in certain upgrade, backup and restore operations of the device or application, making it necessary to sign in.

## Purchasing or Renewing a Subscription in the United States

To purchase or renew a subscription for the US, visit <u>www.foreflight.com/pricing</u> or tap on a plan:

#### • \$99.99 (USD) Basic Plus - US, 1 Pilot for 1 Year

#### 🛠 \$199.99 (USD) Pro Plus - US, 1 Pilot for 1 Year

The Basic Plus plan includes all the essential ForeFlight features, including VFR sectionals and High and Low IFR Enroute charts, extensive flight planning capabilities, flight plan filing and briefing (including ForeFlight Graphical Briefing), aviation weather information, and more. The Basic Plus plan also includes the Logbook and Weight & Balance features, as well as Checklist and the Aeronautical Data layer.

The Pro Plus plan has everything that comes with the Basic Plus plan, as well as more advanced features such as geo-referenced plates and airport diagrams, Plates on Maps, Hazard Advisor<sup>™</sup>, flight plan notifications, route Profile View, and Cloud Documents, which allows you to sync documents you've uploaded through ForeFlight Manage to all your devices. Pro Plus includes Checklist, and also Synthetic Vision for iPad, providing a detailed 3D terrain view. When connected to an AHRS receiver such as the Stratus 2/2S your view includes pitch/roll.

These subscriptions do not provide access to Canadian terminal procedures or IFR enroute charts from Nav Canada. You can add Canadian data to your plan at <u>www.foreflight.com/pricing.</u>

After you tap on the plan you wish to purchase, follow instructions for entering your email address and iTunes password. This will place an order through your iTunes account, which will show up on your credit card like other iTunes purchases (e.g., music or apps).

After your purchase is complete, you'll have immediate access to the app and all data downloads. You'll also receive an email with your new ForeFlight Account password, and an email from Apple with your iTunes receipt.

If you have trouble placing an order due to a slow network connection or a "jailbroken" device, you can purchase a subscription online at <u>www.foreflight.com/</u> pricing.

If you'd like to place an order for multiple iPads, please visit <u>www.foreflight.com/</u> pricing or send an email to <u>sales@foreflight.com</u>.

## Purchasing or Renewing a Subscription in Canada

To purchase or renew a subscription for Canada, visit <u>www.foreflight.com/pricing</u> or tap on a plan:

#### • \$99.99 (USD) Basic Plus - Canada, 1 Pilot for 1 Year

#### ✤ \$199.99 (USD) Pro Plus - Canada, 1 Pilot for 1 Year

These plans have all the same features as their respective US plans, with the exception that Canadian aeronautical products from Nav Canada are provided in place of US data. These include monthly data updates to download terminal procedures from the Canada Air Pilot (CAP), Canadian IFR low and High enroute charts, and Canadian VNC & VTR charts and Canadian Flight Supplement (CFS).

Canadian subscriptions do not provide access to US plates, sectionals, or enroute charts. You can add US data to your plan at <u>www.foreflight.com/pricing</u>. Note: If you purchase Synthetic Vision it applies to all geographies on your subscription plan.

#### **Signing In to your ForeFlight Account**

After you purchase a subscription, you are automatically signed in on that iPad or iPhone.

To use your subscription on a new device, you'll need to sign in to your ForeFlight Account inside the application:

- Tap the "More" tab at the bottom, then "Accounts" in the left side list
- ✤ In the Account Logins section, tap ForeFlight

• Enter your email and password for your ForeFlight account. (Your autogenerated password was emailed to you when you originally placed your order.)

If you can't find your password, enter the email address that you originally used to purchase your subscription and tap the **Forgot Password** button. An email will be sent to you with your password.

## Signing Out of your ForeFlight Account

When you're ready to retire your old iPhone or iPad and won't be using it anymore, remember to sign out of your ForeFlight Account on that device:

- Tap the "More" option at the bottom, then "Accounts" in the left side list
- In the Account Logins section, tap ForeFlight
- Tap **Sign Out** at the bottom and confirm.

This will "unhook" the device from your account. Afterwards, we recommend deleting the app from your device to free up space if you don't plan to use the app on that device again. Tap-and-hold on the ForeFlight icon until it starts to wiggle, then tap the "X" button displayed on the top-left corner of the icon.

## **Changing your Password or Email**

To change your password or email address inside the app:

• In the Account Logins table at the bottom, tap *ForeFlight* 

✤ A screen is displayed with your email address and password. Tap Change Password or Change Email at the bottom.

• Follow the on-screen instructions for changing your password or email.

You can also use the ForeFlight Manage website to change your email, password, and manage which devices are associated with your account. ForeFlight Manage is available at: <a href="http://www.foreflight.com/manage">www.foreflight.com/manage</a>.

#### **Removing Devices from your Account**

If you are signed in to your ForeFlight account on other devices, they will be shown on the Accounts view under "Also Signed In On". You can remove a device from your account, which is the same as signing out of your account on that device, by tapping the red Remove button and entering your ForeFlight credentials.

ALSO SIGNED IN ON	
Sam's iPhone iPhone 5s (A1433/A1453)	Remove
<b>Sam's iPad</b> iPad mini 3 (Wi-Fi)	Remove

## **Providing a DUATS Account**

A CSC DUATS account can also be *optionally* provided by tapping the *DUATS* option at the bottom of the *Accounts* view. When your DUATS account is set, the *File* & *Brief* view will use it when filing or briefing flight plans.

When your CSC DUATS account is not provided and you select the "FAA/Domestic" flight plan option, ForeFlight Mobile will automatically use the ForeFlight corporate DUATS account. If you select the "ICAO" flight plan option, ForeFlight Mobile will file the plan with Lockheed Martin Flight Service.

# **Signing Out of your DUATS Account**

If you are signed-in to a CSC DUATS account but would like your flight plans to be filed with Lockheed Martin Flight Service, you first need to sign out of your CSC DUATS account. Tap **More** > **Accounts** then tap on your CSC DUATS number.

iPad 🗢		12:14 PM	≠ 50% 💶
		Sul	bscription
Ownloads	>	SUBSCRIPTION INFORMATION	
	~	Subscription	ForeFlight Pro, Canada
Accounts		Purchased	Feb 1, 2012
🛧 Aircraft	>	Expires	Mar 4, 2015
Settings	>	SUBSCRIPTION OPTIONS	
User Waypoints	>	You're all set! Subscription options will appear	here when it is time to renew.
Devices	>	ACCOUNT LOGINS	
About	>	ForeFlight	
		CSC DUATS	70767877 >

On the next page, tap the red "Sign Out" button.

iPad 🗢	12:28 PM			7 81% 🛄	
		Subscription	CSC DUATS	Sign Out	
Ownloads	10 >	Access code	70767877	0	
L Accounts	>	Password	•••••		
🛧 Aircraft	>	If you wou www.duats.co password abo	uld like to use your personal CSC DU m) account information, enter your a we. Otherwise, you can leave these file your place directly A weld DUAT	JATS (http:// access code and fields blank and	
Settings	>	ForeFlight will	required.	o account is not	

# AIRCRAFT

**NOTE:** For creating and editing aircraft profiles in ForeFlight <u>Logbook</u>, please refer to the **Logbook in ForeFlight Mobile** guide in Documents > Catalog > ForeFlight, or at <u>www.foreflight.com/support</u>.

## **Create or Edit Aircraft Profile**

Create a new Aircraft profile on the More > Aircraft tab, by tapping the "+" button to create a new Aircraft profile from scratch, or by tapping the "i" to the far right of an existing aircraft profile and copying that profile by tapping the "Copy" button in the upper right.

Edit an Aircraft profile by tapping the "i" to the far right of an existing Aircraft profile.

Scroll down in the Aircraft pop-up and tap each item to enter your aircraft's information.

**IMPORTANT:** Do not tap outside of the pop-up, or the information you have entered will be lost.

Ai	ircraft	+	A	vircraft	+	4	Nircraft	+	A	ircraft	+
Cancel	Aircraft	Done	Cancel	Aircraft	Done	Cancel	Aircraft	Done	Cancel	Aircraft	Done
Tail Number	r	Required	EQUIPMENT	= =		CRUISE PER	FORMANCE		DESCENT PE	RFORMANCE	
Model Code	e	Required	ICAO PBN			Cruise Fue	el Per Hour		Descent F	uel Per Hour	
Category		Airplane	GROUND PE	RFORMANCE		DESCENT PE	ERFORMANCE		Descent R	ate (EPM)	
Color		Required	Taxi/Take-	off Fuel Use		Descent Tr	rue Airspeed		ALTITUDES	ale (FF m)	
Home Airpo	ort	KFCI	CLIMB PERF	ORMANCE		Descent F	uel Per Hour		Default Alt	itude	
EQUIPMENT			Climb True	Airspeed		Descent R	ate (FPM)		Maximum	Ceilina	
FAA/Domes	stic Equipment		Climb Fuel	Per Hour		ALTITUDES			UNITS	ooning.	
ICAO Equip	oment	- 1	Climb Rate	e (FPM)		Default Alt	itude		Airspeed L	Inits	Knots
ICAO Surve	eillance		CRUISE PER	FORMANCE		Maximum	Ceiling		Fuel Units		aph
Wake Turbu	ulence		Cruise True	e Airspeed		UNITS			Fuel Type		albu.
	193303	-	Cruise Fue	l Per Hour		Airspeed I	Inits	Knots	- Jer type		

The aircraft performance sections include **Ground Performance** for your aircraft's taxi/take-off fuel burn, as well as **Climb**, **Cruise** and **Descent Performance** sections. All performance numbers use the units selected at the bottom of the Aircraft pop-up. Any performance numbers you enter are used in NavLog on the Maps view to more accurately calculate your time en-route and fuel burn. In the **Glide Performance** section, enter your aircraft's Best Glide Speed, and Best Glide Ratio. For the Best Glide Ratio, enter the part before the :1. eg: For a ratio of 7.8:1, enter only "7.8". Tap **Done** when the Aircraft profile is complete.

Tap an aircraft's row to set it as the default aircraft. It will then be used to provide flight performance characteristics in route planning when those details are not specified (see *Maps* section of this guide).

## **Delete Aircraft Profile**

To delete an aircraft profile, swipe your finger over it from right to left, then tap the red Delete button.

	Aircraft	+	Aircraft		+
N10SWIPE	145 Kts	✓ (j >	C82/G 145 kts	✓ (i) >	Delete
N99999 C82/G	145 kts	(i) >	N999999 C82/G 145 kts		(j) >

# LOGBOOK

The Logbook feature lets you track your hours, currency, ratings, endorsements, medical certificates, and more across all your devices. It is included in the Basic Plus and Pro Plus subscription plans, and as an add-on for other plans.

Your current logbook can be imported from ForeFlight Web for easy transfer of data, and new entries can be entered manually, or automatically if Track Log auto-start/-stop is enabled.

Aircraft can be copied directly from your current aircraft profiles, and people can be copied from your contacts and assigned various roles for each flight, including SIC, instructor, student, and more. An endorsement feature allows instructors to sign off on a student's progress with a digital signature.

Pilots can also export a flight experience report or FAA 8710 that can be used for completing annual insurance forms, rental applications, job applications, and more.

'ad 🗢	2:02 PM	🕈 🕴 79% 🚃
	Logboo	ok 🕇
Downloads	ENTRIES	
Accounts	All	1078.7
	Last 7 Days	0.7
T Aircran	Last 30 Days	5.4
🗍 Logbook	Last 90 Days	11.6
🔒 Weight & Balance	> Last 6 Months	18.2
Settings	> Last 12 Months	24.9
User Waypoints	CURRENCY SUMMARY	
D Track Logs	General (ASEL) Expires May 8, 2016	62 Day REMAININ
Devices	> Night (ASEL) Not Current	0 Day REMAININ
About	IFR (Airplane) Expires Jun 30, 2016	115 Day REMAININ
	Flight Review Expires Aug 31, 2017	542 Day BEMANN
	Add currency summary	
	MENU	
	Reports	
	Aircraft	
	People	
	Qualifications	
	Settings	

Logbook is part of the ForeFlight Cloud, allowing you to make new entries and track your currency from any device signed into your account.

For complete details, see the **Logbook in ForeFlight Mobile** guide in Documents > Catalog > ForeFlight, or at <u>www.foreflight.com/support</u>.

# CHECKLIST

ForeFlight Checklist lets you complete a checklist with a series of taps, and also includes easy access to Abnormal and Emergency checklists. The app includes checklist templates for a variety of fixed-wing and select rotorcraft models, all derived from pilot operating handbooks. The templates can be customized as needed to fit your particular aircraft.

Pad 🗇		12:15 PM		🚽 🕴 86% 📼	
		Back	PREFLIGHT Before Starting Engine	Edit 🔼	
Downloads	3	Preflight Ins	pection	COMPLETE	
L Accounts	>	Passenger I	Briefing	COMPLET	
1 Aircraft	>	Seats, Seat	Belts,	ADJUST AND LOC	
Logbook	>	Shoulder H	arnesses		
🥝 Checklist		🕑 Brakes		TEST AND SE	
Weight & Balance	>	Avionics Po	wer Switch	OF	
Settings	0	The avionics now	CAUTION	ing engine start to	
User Waypoints	>	prevent possible	damage to avionics.	ng organ sarata	
Track Logs	>	C Electrical Er	quipment	OF	
Uevices	2	Circuit Brea	kers	CHECK I	
About	>	Autopilot		OF	
		Cowl Flaps		OPE	
		Fuel Select	or Valve	BOT	
		Reset	Skip	Check	
	0	@ ≥			

Checklist preserves your progress and location in a checklist if you tap away to another part of the app, such as the Maps view, and puts you right where you left off when you tap back into More, allowing you to seamlessly move between Checklist and your other inflight tools.

Checklist is included with ForeFlight's Basic Plus and Pro Plus subscription plans, and is available as an add-on to other plans. Visit <u>foreflight.com/pricing</u> to upgrade your plan level or add Checklist to an existing subscription.

#### **Checklist Pro Migration**

If you used ForeFlight's Checklist Pro for iPhone app (on iPhone and/or iPad) and your Checklist Pro account email address is the same as your ForeFlight Mobile account address, your checklists were automatically migrated to ForeFlight Mobile. If the email address you used for the Checklist Pro account is not the same address you use for your current ForeFlight account, please contact the Pilot Support Team at <u>team@foreflight.com</u> with details about your Checklist Pro account email address, and we will assist you with migrating your checklists to ForeFlight Mobile.

## **Setting Up Checklists**

Tap the Plus button in the upper-right corner of the Checklist view to set up a new checklist. You can enter a tail number manually, or tap "Lookup Aircraft" to select from your list of configured aircraft profiles doing so does not affect the profiles in any way, it only copies their tail numbers. Entering a tail number is optional, as is entering a name for the checklist, but this can be useful if you want to identify a checklist by



more than the tail number, such as with a specific mission type.

Tap "Template" to select from a list of preconfigured templates provided by ForeFlight. These templates are based on the operating handbook's of various aircraft types and configurations. At the bottom are some templates not associated with any aircraft, including the "IMSAFE" checklist for determining readiness for flying and a "Passenger Brief" template. The default "Basic" template includes examples of each type of checklist component to help you build a checklist from scratch if you don't use any template.

Checklists based on templates are fully editable after being created and do not affect the templates themselves it any way, so even if your particular aircraft type or configuration isn't provided it can be helpful to start with a template for a similar aircraft.

**IMPORTANT:** After creating a checklist for your aircraft from one of the available templates, before using the checklist you must verify that all entries correspond to your aircraft's POH.

12:09 PM		7 \$ 88	%
Add Checklist	Select Template		
	Q Search		
CESSNA			
182Q Skylane 1978		C182	0
182R Skylane 1985		C182	Q
T206H Stationa	ir TC G1000	C206	C
CIRRUS			
SR-22 G1		SR22	С
DIAMOND			
DA-40		DA40	C
GRUMMAN AME	RICAN		
AA-5		AA5	C
MOONEY			
M20R Ovation 2	2 GX	M20P	0
PIPER			
PA-28-181 Arch	er II	P28A	0
PA-32-301 Sara	toga	PA32	С
PA-44-180 Sem	inole G1000	PA44	C
OTHER			
I.M.S.A.F.E. Use the IMSAFE mental readiness	checklist to determine physica for flying.	al and	C
Passanger Brief	f		

## **Editing Checklists**

All checklists include three "groups" for organizing lists: Normal, Abnormal, and Emergency. Apart from those three groups, every aspect of a checklist can be edited however you like, whether it is built from scratch or copied from a template.

Every page within Checklist has an Edit button in the upper-right - tap this to edit the contents of each page.

12:16 PM		7 * 8	1 🕴 86% 💷	
Checklist	N011FF, S&R Cessna 182R Skylane (C182)	Edit	A	
Normal	Edit Lists			
PREFLIGHT	Edit Subgrou	ups		
Preflight In	spection		>	

From the main Checklist view (where you can view all the checklists you've

created) you can edit the tail number, name, and description of each checklist by tapping a checklist's Edit button while in Edit mode. You can also re-order checklists by tap-holding on the far right and dragging them up or down, and delete a checklist by tapping the minus button on the left and then tapping Delete. You can also delete checklists without entering Edit mode using swipe-delete.

After tapping into a checklist, tap the Edit button to edit either the lists or subgroups within a given group (Normal, Abnormal, or Emergency). When editing subgroups you can change their names, reorder them, or delete them, and add new subgroups using the black button at the bottom of the screen. When editing lists you can change their names, change the group they're in, or change the subgroup they're in (which is based on which group they're in).

12:16 PM		7 🕴 86% 💻
Checklist	Edit Checklist	ம்
Tail Number		N011FF
Name		S&R
Description	Cessna 182R :	Skylane (C182)
	Duplicate Checklist	
	Delete Checklist	

12:16 PM		<b>1</b> 🕴 86% 🗖	
Cancel	New List	Done	
Title		1	
Group		Normal >	
SUBGROUP			
Preflight		0	
In Flight			
Postflight		0	

You can also re-order and delete lists, and add new lists using the button at the bottom of the screen.

Tap Edit while viewing a list to make edits to it. Tap Edit on a check item to change its "Challenge" or "Response", and add optional notes that will appear at the bottom of the check item.

Tap Edit on a detail item (used to separate check items and provide information not associated with a check item) to change its title and text. Create new detail and check items using the buttons at the bottom of the screen and delete or re-order as on the other pages.





## **Using Checklists**

After setting up and editing a new checklist so that it matches your POH, using it is very straightforward.

Tap into a checklist and tap on a list to start using it. Use the Check and Skip buttons at the bottom of screen to check or skip check items, or tap directly on an item to check it. When you check an item, the empty circle on the left turns green with a checkmark; when you skip an item, the circle turns yellow. As you check or skip items, the selection indicator advances down the list,

12:15	PM	7 🕴 86% 🥅	
Back	PREFLIGHT Before Starting Engine	Edit 🔼	
🕑 Pre	flight Inspection	COMPLETE	
Pas	senger Briefing	COMPLETE	
Sea Sho	its, Seat Belts, bulder Harnesses	ADJUST AND LOCK	

allowing you to move through an entire list using only those two buttons. You can clear a checked or skipped item by tapping on it, allowing you to quickly check off previously skipped items, or clear items that you want to re-check.



Once you've checked or skipped every item in a list, a blue Next button replaces the Skip and Check buttons at the bottom of the screen, allowing you to jump straight into the next list.



Use the Reset button in the lower-left corner of a list to clear all items within that list. The Reset button can also be used when viewing a checklist to clear every list within that checklist. **NOTE:** Resetting a checklist also clears lists in other groups that you can't see from the group you're in.

If you tap the Back button in the upperleft to leave a list before completing it, your progress in that list is indicated by a circle that fills in as you complete more of the list. Once fully completed the list is marked with a check.

The red Emergency button in the topright is available on every page within a checklist for quick access. Tapping it will place you directly into the Emergency list



group, allowing you to select and begin using one of the emergency lists.

#### **Sharing Checklists**

From the main Checklist view, tap the Send To button at the bottom of the screen. Tap on the checklist that you want to share and tap the Share button in the upperright. Tap on a nearby iPad's/iPhone's name to share it with AirDrop, or tap Mail (or another email app) to create a new email draft with the checklist's file attached.



Checklists received via AirDrop will automatically be imported into ForeFlight Mobile, which will open and jump to the Checklist view so you can see the new checklist. If you receive an email with an attached checklist, tap on the attachment and tap "Copy to ForeFlight" to import the checklist and open ForeFlight to the Checklist view.

Checklist files can only be opened and edited within ForeFlight.

# WEIGHT & BALANCE

The Weight & Balance feature allows you to quickly determine whether your aircraft is loaded within its envelope, an important part of every pre-flight. It is included in the Basic Plus, Pro, and Pro Plus plans for individuals, as well as the Business Pro plan for multi-pilot business subscribers.

The Weight & Balance feature can be used for **fixed-wing** aircraft that meet these requirements:

- Constant weight limits (i.e., weight limits do not vary with CG)
- CG is in length units, not %MAC
- Takeoff and Landing CG limit envelopes are the same
- Only 1 fuel moment table (i.e., a single variable-arm fuel station)

Weight & Balance includes the SmartOptions<sup>™</sup> interview, which uses data from Type Certificates to allow you to answer a few questions to quickly set up your aircraft's W&B profile based on its tail number and the empty weight, moment, and CG from the POH.

The SmartOptions<sup>™</sup> interview is available for many popular Cessna, Cirrus, Diamond, Mooney, and Piper aircraft.

Once your aircraft's W&B profile is setup, you can quickly create a Loading Summary for each flight, and you can share the profile and a PDF copy of the Loading Summary via email. W&B profiles are automatically <u>synced</u> between your devices when Synchronize User Data is enabled in More > Settings.

For full details, see the **Weight & Balance in ForeFlight Mobile** guide in Documents > Catalog > ForeFlight, or at <u>www.foreflight.com/support</u>.

Pad 🕈	12:3	8 PM	70%
W&B Profiles	N0 <sup>-</sup>	11FF	ٺ
	Aircraft load	is within limits	
FRONT SEATS		GRAPH	
Mike	180 lb	C takeoff landing -	Zero fuel —— landing limit
🥝 Jim	175 lb		
O Mary	120 lb		0
BACK SEATS		/	
O James	250 lb	aight	
O William	182 lb	š (	
BAGGAGE AREA			
Luggage	105 lb		
Survival Pack	45 lb	fore	aft
FUEL TANKS			
O Leg 1	60 usg avgas (fit 55)	TAKEOFF (MAX 2,900 LB)	
O Leg 2	75 usg avgas (fit 50)	Takeoff Weight	2,615 lt
		CG (42.9 to 50)	46,6 ir
		Takeoff Fuel	60 usg avga
		LANDING (MAX 2,750 LB)	
		Landing Weight	2,285 lk
		CG (41.1 to 50)	46.3 ir
		Fuel Remaining	5 usg avgas
		ZERO FUEL	
		Zero Fuel Weight	2,255 lb
Edit Load	Setup	CG (41 to 50)	46.3 ir
6000		STATION LIMITS	
¢ 🖽			200

# Settings

ForeFlight Mobile supports a variety of settings to let you customize how you like to use and view your data. Settings are changed in the *More* view or the main **Settings** application on the iPad.

All settings will be reset to their default values if you uninstall ForeFlight Mobile.

Brightness Slider - integrates with the iPad's brightness slider, but allows for additional dimming if the lowest setting of the iPad's slider is not dark enough.

♣ App Theme - sets the app's overall color scheme to a "Light" color (same as prior app versions) and new "Dark" color, ideal for flying at night.

#### **Airport View**

Show Weather First - turn ON to show the METAR view first when viewing an airport. Turn off to see that last-viewed data category first.

#### **Weather View**

✤ Past TAF Translations - turn ON to see expired TAF forecast time periods in the weather view. Turn OFF to hide expired TAF forecast periods.

#### **Route View**

✤ Airway Decoding - set to Bends Only to filter out airway intersections that do not cause a course change. VORs and NDBs will always be shown in an airway.

Airway Entry/Exit - select Any Waypoint or Radio Navaids Only for auto routing from the "Routes" button in the NavLog.

#### Map View

Auto Center Mode - select Track Up, Track Up Forward, or North Up.

✤ Auto Center Deactivate - select from automatic (auto center mode will turn off the instant you manually pan or zoom the map) or manual (the auto center crosshair button must be pressed to disable auto center mode).

• Extended Centerlines - turn ON to see extended runway centerlines for airports in the current route. Centerlines extend 5 NM from runway end.

Distance Rings - turn ON to show 3 concentric rings centered around your aircraft's location, in the the style selected in Distance Rings Style.

✤ Distance Rings Style - choose between: Automatic, which changes the NM scale of the rings as you zoom in and out on the Maps; Distance-based: 5, 10, 25 NM or 10, 20, 50 NM or 20, 40, 100 NM; or Time-based, which adjust the size of the
rings based on groundspeed to show where your aircraft will be in: 5, 10, 30 minutes or 10, 20, 60 minutes.

• **Track Vector** - turn *ON* to display a vector in front of your aircraft's icon.

Track Vector Length - tap to select the length of the track vector: 15, 30, 45, 60 seconds; 2, 5, 10 minutes; 1/2, 1, 2, 5, 10, 25, 50 Nautical Miles.

✤ Profile Corridor Width - total width of the profile corridor; obstacles and terrain within the corridor are shown in the Profile view: 1/2, 1, 2, 4, 6, 8, 20 Nautical Miles wide.

✤ Route Labels - turn ON to see labels on route waypoints on Map. When ON, these labels will each hide/show to prevent overlapping with each other.

Nav Log Columns - select columns to display in NavLog on Maps page: Totals Only, Leg only or Both (default).

Current Location Marker - select an image to be used on Maps view to show your current location when in motion.

Initial Map - whether the last-viewed map should be shown when the app starts, or a different base map.

✤ Hazard Advisor - select minimum groundspeed for Hazard Advisor layer to be active when it is selected on Maps.

✤ Hazard Altitudes - altitudes for the Red and Yellow colors in Hazard Advisor and Profile view. First number is the altitude below the aircraft for the Red color (also includes above current altitude), 2nd number is the altitude below the aircraft for the Yellow color: Normal (100'/1000'); Heli - Normal (50'/300'); Heli - Medium (25'/200'); Heli - Low (25'/100').

Map Touch Action - No Action: charts are seamlessly stitched together; Bring chart to front: single-tap on a chart to bring it forward, covering any adjacent overlapping charts; Bring chart to front with legends: same behavior as Bring chart to front but also displays the frontmost chart's legend and borders.

✤ Four-color Radar - turn ON to display radar in a low resolution, four-color scheme that complies with dBZ-to-color mapping standards defined by the Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics. See <u>Radar Legends</u> for more information.

Cockpit Sharing - turn ON to allow sharing routes between devices running ForeFlight Mobile on the same WiFi network.

✤ Show Annotations on Map - turn ON to show plate or airport diagram annotations when displaying a Plate or Airport Diagram on the Map.

✤ Auto-Receive Panel Flight Plans - turn ON to automatically load new routes received from a Garmin Connext connected panel to your NavLog. Turn OFF to receive a notification when a new route is available and manually load it.

#### **Plate and Document Views**

✤ Lock Disables Buttons - turn ON to disable all buttons on Plates and Documents views when lock button is bright blue in top toolbar. This will also disable the bottom buttons that are used to change to other views like Airports, Maps, etc.

#### Traffic

✤ Hide Distant Traffic (when connected to a Stratus ADS-B receiver) - turn this ON to hide traffic more than 15NM from your current GPS location and/or more than 3,500' above or below your current GPS altitude.

#### Search and Rescue

Enable Search and Rescue - turn ON to enable the SAR grid overlays and SAR patterns (iPad only). See Search and Rescue Supplement, available in Documents
 > Catalog > ForeFlight. SAR features are accessed via the Procedure Preview.

SAR Waypoints as Lat/Lon (iPad only) - turn ON to display the waypoint labels in a SAR pattern as Latitude/Longitude, instead of SAR-01, SAR-02, etc...

#### Pack

✤ Enable Auto-Check - turn ON to have Pack automatically check whether downloads are needed prior to the flight. Turn OFF to only activate Pack by tapping the Pack "suitcase" button at the bottom of the NavLog.

#### Track Log

✤ Enable Start/Stop Control - turn ON to show the Track Log "REC" button and the Track Log timer in the bottom-left of the Maps view. Starting or stopping a Track Log by tapping the REC button overrides the Track Log auto start/stop functionality, if that setting is enabled.

Enable Auto Start/Stop - turn ON to automatically record Track Logs without tapping the REC button.

#### File & Brief

New Plan Format - Same as Last Filed, ICAO, or FAA/Domestic: lets you choose the default type of plan that will be created when you tap the New Flight Plan button on the File & Brief page. An individual flight plan type can be changed while creating the flight plan on the File & Brief page. ✤ ForeFlight Briefing - turn ON to use ForeFlight Briefing when requesting a weather briefing from the File & Brief view. Turn OFF to use the legacy text briefing instead.

#### Taxi Diagram

Auto Show Taxi - turn ON to automatically switch to the current airport's taxi diagram, when available, upon landing.

Show Taxi on Map - turn ON to show the automatically-displayed taxi diagram overlaid on the Maps page; turn OFF to show on the Plates page.

#### Preferences

 Alerts - adjust settings related to in-app alerts. See <u>Alerts</u> for more information about each alert.

✤ Speak All Alerts - turn ON to receive audio alerts via your device's speaker or a connected headset for all active alerts in ForeFlight. When toggled ON a confirmation message is played; use the iPad/iPhone volume buttons to adjust volume. NOTE: TFR and Traffic alerts will not play audio when ForeFlight detects that you are below 250' AGL, even if Speak All Alerts is enabled.

#### General

✤ 500' AGL Alerts - turn ON to receive an alert when your aircraft descends past 500' AGL.

Cabin Altitude Alerts (requires iPad/iPhone or external device equipped with barometric sensor) - turn ON to receive alerts when your aircraft passes 12,000' MSL and 25,000' MSL.

• Runway Proximity Alerts - turn ON to receive alerts when nearing or entering a runway.

✤ Sink Rate Alerts - turn ON to receive an alert when your descending vertical speed becomes excessive (-4,000' per minute above 2,500' AGL, -3,000' per minute at 2,500' AGL, down to -1,500' per minute at 500' AGL).

✤ Traffic Alerts - turn ON to receive an alert when traffic is within 1.8 NM and +/- 1,200' GPS altitude of your aircraft's current position. NOTE: Traffic audio alerts are only issued when ADS-B Out is detected in your aircraft.

#### **Route-Based**

Destination WX Frequency Alerts - turn ON to receive a callout with your destination airport's weather frequency as you near the airport.

#### TFRs

✤ TFR Alerts - turn ON to receive alerts when you are approaching or near a TFR.

✤ Include DC SFRA/FRZ - turn OFF to prevent ForeFlight from issuing TFR alerts for Washington DC's Special Flight Rules Area and Flight Restricted Zone. Other TFRs within the SFRA/FRZ (e.g. stadium TFRs) will still trigger alerts when this setting is OFF - only the SFRA/FRZ are affected by it. Pilots are encouraged to leave this setting ON unless they regularly fly through the SFRA/FRZ.

✤ Altitude Buffer - height in feet added above and below TFRs that determines whether an alert is displayed based on your altitude relative to the TFR. For example, approaching a TFR whose top is 4,000' below your current altitude will trigger an alert if the altitude buffer is set to 5,000', but will not trigger an alert if the altitude buffer is set to a smaller height. Available buffers are 500', 1,000', 2,000', and 5,000'.

• Units/Time - menu containing the following settings:

• Show Local Times - turn ON to see times in the local time zone. Turn off to see times in Zulu time.

- Wind Speed select preferred units.
- **Pressure** select preferred units.
- **Temperature** select preferred units.
- Visibility select preferred units.
- **Coordinates** select preferred units for viewing coordinates.
  - **DD.dd**<sup>o</sup> degrees and hundredths of degrees.
  - DD<sup>o</sup>MM.mm degrees, minutes, and hundredths of minutes.
  - DD°MM'SS" degrees, minutes, and seconds.
  - **MGRS 6-/8-/10-digit** Military Grid Reference System with three precision levels (more digits equates to greater precision).
- Aircraft Speed select preferred units for airspeed and groundspeed.
- **Distance** select preferred units for distance.

✤ Allow Device to Sleep - turn ON to allow your device to sleep while running ForeFlight Mobile, including when on Plates view or when downloading data. Turn OFF to ensure that the iPad will not enter sleep mode while ForeFlight Mobile is running in the foreground, even if your iPad is set to usually sleep after a certain period of inactivity.

✤ Automatic Clock Check - turn ON to automatically verify that your iPad's system time is set correctly. If it is found to be incorrect, you will get an alert. Proper system time is important for many features in the app.

Confirm Before Dial (iPhone only) - turn ON to display a pop-up when you tap on a phone number so you can confirm that you want to call the number.

Enable Ownship - ALWAYS: shows your aircraft position on charts, and with ForeFlight Mobile Pro, on approach plates and airport diagrams; NEVER: your aircraft position is not shown on any chart or plate. This is required for certain operators; LIMITED: with ForeFlight Mobile Pro, shows your aircraft position on the airport diagram when your speed is under 80 knots; above 80 knots, or when GPS location accuracy degrades below the requirements in AC-120-76C, the aircraft position will not be shown.

• Show Heliports - turn ON to view heliports in nearby airports lists. You can always search for heliports (and use them in routes) regardless of this setting.

Show Private Airports - turn ON to see private airports in nearby airports lists. Private Airports include any airport not open to the public, including Military airports.

✤ Start on Last Screen - turn OFF to start on the Airports view on next launch. This can help if one view is causing the application to quit immediately after launch.

Extra Keyboard Keys - turn OFF to hide the row of numbers 0-9 shown above the regular keyboard. When OFF, 0-9 are still accessible using the ".?123" key in the lower-left of the keyboard.

✤ Synchronize User Data - turn ON to synchronize user data automatically between devices via the cloud. See <u>Sync</u> for details.

✤ Enable Diagnostic Logs - turn ON to record diagnostic information as you download chart data. This information can then be sent to the ForeFlight Pilot Support Team to help troubleshoot problems you may be having downloading data.

## **USER WAYPOINTS**

For more information about User Waypoints see <u>Managing User Waypoints</u>. Go to **More** > **User Waypoints** to display previously saved user waypoints. To edit a

waypoint's details, tap the (i) button. You can create a new user waypoint by using the + button in the upper-right. This is the easiest way to create a waypoint if you elect to describe the waypoint using lat/lon (as opposed to selecting the point on a map).

Tap a waypoint's name in the list to view it on the Maps view. Swipe-to-delete can be used to remove a waypoint. The clear button will remove all waypoints.

Waypoints can also be inserted by tapping on the Maps view. Tap & hold your finger on the Map for a moment then release it. A list of possible waypoints will pop up. Tap the grey "More" button next to the Lat/Lon coordinates and tap the blue "Save" button to to view the "User Waypoint" pop-up. Give the waypoint a name and optionally a description, then press the Save button to save it.

Waypoint names cannot contain any whitespace such as spaces or tabs. Waypoints can be added to a route on the Maps view like any other waypoint - just type the waypoint name as part of the route. User Waypoints can be added in bulk as well, using a KML or CSV file. See the ForeFlight website for details: www.foreflight.com/support/user-waypoints.

#### Latitude/Longitude Formats

For \*input\* of latitude/longitude in User Waypoints or the Search box on the Maps page, 4 formats are supported:

- DD.dd
- DD MM SS
- DD MM.mm
- DD MM SSs

Examples of these formats using this location 32°44'55.6"N, 80°45'57.6"W are:

- ✤ DD.dd 32.75N/080.77W
- ✤ DD MM SS 324456/-0804558
- ♣ DD MM.mm 3244.93/-08045.96
- DD MM SSs 3244556/-08045576

NOTES:

1) Latitude is always DD, and Longitude is always DDD.

2) Include a minus sign for Longitudes west and Latitudes south.

3) After \*input\* into the User Waypoint, these formats are \*stored\* in the DD.dd format. Or when tapping File & Brief from the NavLog, the DUATS filing form stores in the DDMMSSs format.

For \*reading\* Airport coordinates and ad-hoc tap-and-add coordinates ForeFlight allows you to select from 3 formats:

DD.dd

DD MM.mm

DD MM SS

To change formats within ForeFlight Mobile, go to **More** > **Settings** > **Units/Time** > **Coordinates** and select the format you want.

#### **Sharing User Waypoints**

You can export your user waypoints as a .kml file and send them via email. Tap the Send To button in the bottom left of the User Waypoints page and tap Mail to create a draft email with the .kml file attached. **NOTE:** You must have an email account set up in your device's Apple Mail app for the mail option to appear.



If you receive an email containing another pilot's user waypoints, you can import them into ForeFlight directly

from the Apple Mail app. Tap-hold on the attached file (named "userwaypoints.kml") and tap "Copy to ForeFlight" in the popup. This will open ForeFlight and automatically import the user waypoints. Importing new waypoints does not delete any waypoints that are already in ForeFlight, unless they have the same name (e.g. "HOME"), in which case the new waypoint will replace the original.



# **TRACK LOGS**

The Track Logs view is where you can view and edit details about recorded Track Logs and export them to your logbook, share them via email, Facebook, or Twitter, or open them in other apps, such as Google Earth and CloudAhoy.

See <u>Track Logs</u> for more information.

## DEVICES

The Devices view shows any connected devices explicitly supported by ForeFlight. The box for Stratus ADS-B, Baron Mobile Link for XM, and Flight Simulator data connections can be tapped for additional information.

The box for Bluetooth GPSs like the Bad Elf Pro, DUAL, and Garmin GLO indicates that the GPS is connected, but no additional information about the GPS, such as # of satellites or battery % is available. For that information, use the helper app provided by the GPS manufacturer.

#### Location Disabled / Troubleshooting GPS position issues

Check the following if your GPS position does not show in ForeFlight Mobile or if the "Location Disabled" pop-up displays:



Open Apple Settings, tap **Privacy**, then **Location Services**.



#### Confirm that Location Services are ON, and the setting for ForeFlight is **Always**.



If the setting for ForeFight is Never, tap "Never >" then choose **Always**.

Privacy	Location Services		Continue Control Co	
			ALLOW LOCATION ACCESS	
Location S	ervices		Never	
Location Serv hotspot locati About Locatio	ices uses Bluetooth and crowd- ons to determine your approxim on Services & Privacy	sourced Wi-Fi ate location.	Always	~
			Access to your location will be available is in the background.	even when this app
Share My L	_ocation	>	App explanation: "Tap ALLOW/CONTINU aircraft location up to date"	JE to keep your
ForeF	Flight	Never >		

Then open ForeFlight Mobile, tap **More**, then **Settings**. Confirm that Enable Ownship is set to: **Always**.

If these steps do not resolve the issue, contact the ForeFlight Pilot Support Team at <u>team@foreflight.com</u> for assistance.

### **ABOUT**

The *About* view provides more information about ForeFlight, LLC as well as version information (at the top of the view).

# **Apple Watch**

## **OVERVIEW**

Apple Watch interfaces with ForeFlight Mobile on your iPhone to provide easily accessible information on current weather and flight data. Raise your arm to awaken the watch, then tap the ForeFlight icon to open the app. The app contains an optional glance page, as well as three primary pages: Airports, Instruments, and Timers. Move between the pages by swiping sideways.



pple Watcl

# SETTING UP

Apple Watch can only be used with an iPhone running iOS 8.2 or later.

Tap the Apple Watch icon on your iPhone's home screen to display a list of apps that have extensions on the Watch, and tap ForeFlight to open the options page for ForeFlight on the Watch.

**Show App on Apple Watch** - turn ON to enable ForeFlight's extension on the Watch. This setting is turned on by default.

**Show in Glances** - turn ON to enable ForeFlight's glance page on the Watch. This setting is turned off by default.



The ForeFlight icon will appear on your Watch face if you have installed ForeFlight Mobile version 7.0 or later on your iPhone and have paired your Watch with your iPhone.



# **AIRPORTS PAGE**

The Airports page displays the flight conditions at up to 30 airports: the ten nearest airports to your position (NBY), your ten most recently viewed airports (REC), and your top ten favorite airports (FAV). You can select which group of airports to view by tapping the bar at the top of the screen. The color coding is the same as on other ForeFlight devices:

Green	<b>VFR</b> : Ceiling greater than 3,000' and visibility greater than 5 miles; includes sky clear
Blue	<b>MVFR</b> : Ceiling 1,000' to 3,000' and/or visibility 3 to 5 miles inclusive.
Red	<b>IFR</b> : Ceiling 500' to less than 1,000' and/or visibility 1 to less than 3 miles.

Magenta LIFR: Ceiling less than 500' and/or visibility less than 1 mile.



Next to the airport name is the time since the weather information was updated, based on the latest METAR.

Tapping on an airport brings up more detailed weather information, including surface winds, visibility, cloud cover, temperature, altimeter, and weather warnings, if present.

× KHOU - 40m ago VFR Flight Category
<b>120° at 9 kts</b> Winds
<b>10 sm</b> Visibility
Coattored 4 000'

# **INSTRUMENTS PAGE**

The instruments page displays flight information that is normally accessible via the app's Instrument Panel. Three instruments can be displayed at once.



Tapping on an instrument will bring up a menu showing all available instruments, each of which can be tapped on to replace the current one. A checkmark indicates which instrument is currently selected for that slot.

The available instruments are:

- ETA Next (estimated time of arrival at next waypoint)
- Dist Next (distance in nm to next waypoint)
- ETE Next (estimated time enroute to next waypoint)
- ETA Dest (estimated time of arrival at destination)
- Dist Dest (distance in nm to destination)
- ETE Dest (estimated time enroute to destination)
- Ground Speed (in nm)
- GPS Alt (altitude in ft)
- Track (in °M)
- Accuracy (in m)

# TIMER PAGE

The timer page contains two up-counting timers. Tapping on a timer will start it, and tapping again will stop it. Force touch on the screen to bring up a menu with the options **Reset All**, **Reset Top**, **Reset Bottom**, and **Cancel**.



# **ADS-B Weather**

## **OVERVIEW**

ForeFlight Mobile can display ADS-B FIS-B weather data from a number of supported portable and installed ADS-B receivers. See <u>https://foreflight.com/</u> <u>connect/</u> for full details about the currently supported receivers. Please consult your specific device's documentation to learn about how to set up and connect the device.

## **ADS-B WEATHER PRODUCTS**

These are the weather products available from ADS-B:

- Radar local and CONUS, shown on Maps. See radar color vs. intensity legends for <u>Rain</u>.
- METARs and METAR-derived data shown on Maps, such as temperature
- TAFs
- Winds Aloft
- TFRs on Maps page **SEE IMPORTANT NOTICE BELOW**
- PIREPs on Maps page
- AIRMETs/SIGMETs on Maps page
- Special Use Airspace status shown on Maps page when viewing airspace details. Hold finger on airspace to view pop-over. Make sure All is selected at bottom of pop-over to see airspace details.
- Outage messages messages about outages in ADS-B system can be viewed in Stratus status view.

The items listed above are viewed just as they are when on the ground using an Internet connection. There is no user-configuration required beyond ensuring the iPad or iPhone is connected to the ADS-B receiver's Wi-Fi or Bluetooth connection.

## **TFRs IMPORTANT NOTICE:**

While using an ADS-B receiver, up-to-date graphical TFR information is ONLY displayed if you select the TFR Map overlay.

However if the FAA publishes a TFR without associated graphical shape information it may not be possible for ForeFlight Mobile to show the graphical TFR on the Maps page.

You should ALWAYS check the Airports page, under NOTAMs > TFRs for airports along your route, and contact FSS or ATC to confirm that your route does not cross any such TFRs.

TFR data may not be updated or displayed if you are using an ADS-B receiver that does not "replay" data received while the iPad is "asleep" or is not connected. Stratus Replay in the Stratus 2/2S saves 30 minutes of recent TFR data for display when ForeFlight Mobile is reopened. TFR data may also not be updated or displayed if the ADS-B receiver is not receiving data from ADS-B towers, or if the ADS-B towers are not broadcasting information about that TFR.

# **STATUS INFORMATION**

When an ADS-B receiver is connected and a Map overlay is selected, the number of Towers being received is shown in the upper-left corner of the Map, underneath the timestamp. The name of the receiver (if known) is shown to the left of the number of towers. When 0 towers are being received, **0 Towers** is shown in Red. When 1 tower is being received, **1 Tower** is shown in Orange, and when more than 1 tower is being received the text is shown in white:



## **ANIMATED ADS-B RADAR**

When the Radar overlay is selected on the Maps page, the animation play button is displayed in the lower-left corner of the screen. ForeFlight Mobile will animate (loop) up to 5 frames of NEXRAD data. Regional NEXRAD (within ~250 nm of your position) is updated every 5 minutes, while CONUS radar is updated every 15 minutes.

If you tap the play button before 2 or more frames of radar data have been received, you will see a message that the radar cannot be animated until more data is received.



Tap the Maps Settings (gear) button and then select the ADS-B receiver > Status to see how many radar frames have been received.

Settings Stratus State	us
DEVICE	
Connected	Yes
Battery	99%
Power Source	Battery
Serial Number	
Firmware	1.4.0.396
Driver Version	2.6.B6
DATA	
Local Radar Update	None
National Radar Update	None
Radar Frames	0
Text Update	None
Text Report Count	0
Receiving From	1 Tower >
STRATUS REPLAY	
Status	Up-to-date
TRAFFIC	

# ADS-B TOWER LOCATION ON MAP

When **Show ADSB Towers** is **ON** in the ADS-B receiver > Status settings, the location of each ADS-B Tower currently being received is shown on the Map.



The Lat/Long location of each tower is shown under the tower icon, and the signal quality (0-100%) is shown to the right of the tower icon. If quality decreases, the signal quality is shown in yellow or red, and fewer graphical signal quality indicators are shown above the antenna:



As long as you are receiving data from 1 tower you should be receiving timely weather data and radar updates.

# **ADS-B Traffic**

## **OVERVIEW**

ForeFlight Mobile can display ADS-B TIS-B traffic from a number of supported portable and installed ADS-B receivers. See <u>https://foreflight.com/connect/</u> for full details about the currently supported receivers. Please consult your specific device's documentation to learn about how to set up and connect the device.

# **IMPORTANT TRAFFIC NOTICE**

TRAFFIC DISPLAY FEATURES MAY NOT SHOW ALL AIRCRAFT IN THE AREA AND ARE NOT TO BE USED AS A PRIMARY MEANS OF AIRCRAFT VISIBILITY, DETECTION OR AVOIDANCE. TRAFFIC DISPLAYED WILL VARY DEPENDING ON ADS-B COVERAGE AREAS AND ON THE TYPE AND VERSION OF ADS-B "IN" AND ADS-B "OUT" EQUIPMENT INSTALLED IN YOUR AIRCRAFT AND OTHER AIRCRAFT.

IF YOUR AIRCRAFT IS NOT EQUIPPED WITH ADS-B "OUT", YOU WILL NOT RECEIVE A COMPLETE PICTURE OF TRAFFIC. YOU MAY EVEN RECEIVE NO TRAFFIC AT ALL. THIS IS DUE TO THE DESIGN AND IMPLEMENTATION OF THE ADS-B/TIS-B SYSTEM BY THE FAA.

## TRAFFIC ACCESS IN FOREFLIGHT MOBILE

Some ADS-B receivers like the Stratus 1/1S include a single-band 978 MHz UAT receiver, while dual-band receivers like the Stratus 2/2S include a dual-band 978 MHz UAT + 1090 MHz receiver. ADS-B traffic may be transmitted over one or both bands. Aircraft operating above

### **Important Note:**

ADS-B traffic data is NOT saved by Stratus Replay. When using any Stratus device, ForeFlight Mobile must be running in order for ADS-B traffic to be displayed.

18,000' use the 1090ES band, though these aircraft continue to broadcast on 1090ES when descending below 18,000'.

To display Traffic, tap the Maps drop-down and select the Traffic overlay. Use the "Filter Traffic Settings" (later in this section) to hide traffic beyond 15nm or +/- 3,500' from your location.



## **STATUS INFORMATION**

To learn the status of the ADS-B receiver connection, data availability and more, use the Devices view as described above. When connected, the ADS-B receiver will be an option shown in the Devices view. Tap it to see full status information. The following Traffic-specific details are provided on the status view:

- Traffic Update (978/UAT): single- and dual-band receivers shows the traffic updates received from ADS-B ground stations and aircraft broadcasting on the 978/UAT band.
- Traffic Update (1090): dual-band receivers only shows the traffic updates received from aircraft broadcasting on the 1090ES band.

# TRAFFIC SYMBOLS

Moving traffic targets are displayed as "arrowheads" pointing in the direction that the target is traveling. Stationary targets, or ones with no direction or speed information, are shown as diamonds. Airborne traffic targets are shown in blue while surface targets are shown in brown. When a traffic target is within 5 NM horizontally and +/- 1,200' vertically of your current position, the target's color changes to yellow.

The relative altitude (in 100's of feet) between your current altitude and the target's altitude is shown with a + indicating above and a - indicating below your current altitude. In this example, the

stationary target (or one without direction/speed information) is 300' below the aircraft's altitude.

**IMPORTANT:** Because of the way the ADS-B system (including aircraft ADS-B transmitters & receivers, and ADS-B ground stations) operates, ForeFlight Mobile may at times show relative altitudes of traffic targets based on the pressure altitude detected from your aircraft's ADS-B transmitter, and the pressure altitude read from a traffic target's ADS-B data. As a result of the cumulative inaccuracies in pressure altitude systems, you should consider any target shown to be within 500' vertically as potentially being at the same altitude as your aircraft. Never use ADS-B traffic data from ForeFlight Mobile as the sole means of traffic avoidance; always use "See & Avoid" or direct instructions from ATC.

**NOTE:** Some transmitted traffic data can be incomplete at times, so aircraft flight/ tail number, vertical speed and velocity vector may not be available for one or more targets.





The TrafficTrend<sup>™</sup> vector is projected out of the front of the arrowhead to indicate the target's expected position in the next 60 seconds (longer vector = faster speed). In the example to the right, targets are 2,000', 2,100', 2,900', 1,100' and 1,300' above the aircraft's current GPS altitude.

Aircraft equipped with ADS-B "Out" transmit additional data such as their tail or flight number, which is shown below the target symbol. If the target is climbing or descending **at 500 ft/min or greater**, a vertical arrow indicating the climb or descent is shown to the right of the target. NOTE:



When you zoom out, the TrafficTrend<sup>™</sup> vector and additional data is hidden.





In the example on the left, UPS218 is 28,500' above the aircraft's current altitude and descending. AAL263 is level 32,500' above the aircraft's current altitude and N132VU is 800' above the aircraft's current altitude and descending at more than 500 ft/min.

In the example on the right, FDX0623 is 3,400' above the aircraft's current altitude and climbing at more than 500 ft/min. DAL1416 is level 32,400' above the aircraft's current altitude and an unidentified target is 200' below the aircraft's current altitude and descending at more than 500 ft/min.



You can tap on any target to display a pop-up with additional information, which can include target tail or flight number, heading, speed, and whether the information was broadcast via 978UAT or 1090ES. Tap anywhere to close the pop-up.

## HIDE DISTANT TRAFFIC SETTING

The Hide Distant Traffic setting, shown when your iPad or iPhone is connected to an ADS-B receiver, is accessed via the "Gear" button on the Maps page or on the More page under Devices > ADS-B receiver > Status.

When switched ON, this setting hides traffic that is more than 15NM away from your current GPS location and/or more than 3,500' above or below your current altitude. This allows you to hide distant traffic targets and may be useful if you are flying in busy airspace or near large airports with lots of commercial traffic.

# **OWNSHIP ADS-BOUT INFORMATION**

If your aircraft is equipped with ADS-B Out that is correctly configured and transmitting, tap the **Ownship ADS-B Out** entry in ADS-B Receiver Status to see the tail-number, altitude and location being broadcast by your ADS-B Out equipment.

If your aircraft is not equipped with ADS-B Out, or the ADS-B Out is improperly configured or is not transmitting, the **Ownship ADS-B Out** entry shows **Not Detected**.





## **TRAFFIC ALERTS**

When the **Traffic Alerts** setting is ON in **More** > **Settings** > **Alerts**, a traffic pop-up will be displayed if your aircraft is moving at over 40kts and an ADS-B traffic target comes within 1.8 NM horizontally and +/- 1,200' vertically of your aircraft's position.

The pop-up includes "clock" direction (relative to your aircraft's current track) and relative altitude information to help you locate the target more quickly.

If ForeFlight detects that your aircraft is equipped with ADS-B Out, an audio alert will also be issued with the same information as the visual pop-up. If no ADS-B Out is detected, **you will not receive traffic audio alerts**, but you will still receive the visual pop-up.



If your aircraft is not equipped with ADS-B Out but you fly within range of the traffic "puck" around another aircraft that is equipped with ADS-B Out, you may see a false target representing your aircraft, and a visual traffic alert may also be displayed.

**NOTE:** Traffic alerts are **ADVISORY** in nature and are **NOT** a replacement for "See & Avoid" or ATC traffic advisories.

**IMPORTANT:** Because of the way the ADS-B system (including aircraft ADS-B transmitters & receivers, and ADS-B ground stations) operates, ForeFlight Mobile may at times show relative altitudes of traffic targets based on the pressure altitude detected from your aircraft's ADS-B transmitter, and the pressure altitude read from a traffic target's ADS-B data. As a result of the cumulative inaccuracies in pressure altitude systems, you should consider any target shown to be within 500' vertically as potentially being at the same altitude as your aircraft. Never use ADS-B traffic data from ForeFlight Mobile as the sole means of traffic avoidance; always use "See & Avoid" or direct instructions from ATC.

Like the Runway Proximity Advisor<sup>™</sup>, the Traffic Alert pop-up will display on any screen in ForeFlight Mobile. However if ForeFlight Mobile is not displayed on the screen (e.g., if you are viewing another app, or the iPad or iPhone is sleeping) Traffic Alert pop-ups will not be shown.

# **ForeFlight Connect**

## **OVERVIEW**

ForeFlight Connect allows ForeFlight Mobile to wirelessly connect to and exchange information with portable devices as well as panel-mount avionics to make flying easier, safer and more efficient.

## **STRATUS ADS-B RECEIVERS**

ForeFlight Mobile supports the Stratus family of ADS-B receivers, which are manufactured in the USA by Appareo. These devices provide ForeFlight Mobile with the ability to access ADS-B FIS-B (weather) and TIS-B (traffic) data from the network of ADS-B ground stations. Please consult the Stratus documentation to learn about how to set up and connect the device.

Multiple iPads or iPhones running ForeFlight Mobile can simultaneously connect to a Stratus using Wi-Fi. There is no significant practical limit to the number of iOS devices that can be connected to Stratus at once.

It is recommended that cellular data be turned OFF when using a Stratus ADS-B receiver.

#### **Stratus Status Information**

To see more detailed Stratus status information, tap the Map Settings "gear" button and then tap the Stratus entry, or tap on **More > Devices > Stratus > Status**.



The following details and Settings are provided on the Status view:

- Connected shows "Yes" if a Stratus is connected via Wi-Fi.
- Battery indicates remaining battery life in percent remaining. Not shown when charging Stratus.
- Power Source indicates whether Stratus is being charged.
- Serial Number Stratus serial number, only needed for technical support concerns.
- Firmware version current version of firmware installed on Stratus.
- General NOTAMs list of NOTAMs provided by ADS-B that were not assigned to an airport in ForeFlight Mobile.
- Local/National Update date of most recent radar data, local data is generally
  5m old, national is generally < 15m old.</li>
- Text Update last time a new text report was downloaded (ex. METAR, TAF, Winds Aloft).
- Text Report Count number of ADS-B-provided text reports in ForeFlight Mobile.

- Receiving From number of ground-based towers currently providing Stratus with data. Number of towers is also shown on the Map below the timestamp.
- Stratus Replay Status (Stratus 1S/2S/2 Only) indicates if the ADS-B data saved by Stratus, while ForeFlight Mobile was in the background or the iPad was sleeping, has been sent to ForeFlight Mobile. Up to 30 minutes of data is saved.
- Traffic Update (978/UAT) and (1090) when traffic data was received on either band (1090 requires Stratus 2/2S).
- Ownship ADS-B Out if your aircraft is equipped with ADS-B Out, tap this entry to display the information detected by the Stratus about your ADS-B Out transmissions.
- LED Brightness used to adjust brightness of LEDs on Stratus.
- Turn On When Plugged In when ON the Stratus will turn on when power is provided over the USB cable and turn OFF when power is removed. When power is removed the Stratus will turn OFF in 2 minutes only if the speed is < 5 knots. If speed is > 5 knots, the Stratus will not turn off until the speed drops below 5 knots, or the power button is pressed.
- Use As GPS when ON, the Maps and other views will use GPS fix info from Stratus.
- Logging used only for diagnosing problems, this manages logging of ADS-B data stream received by Stratus. Leave this OFF normally, as it reduces app performance.
- Power-Saving mode reduces the WiFi transmit power to increase battery life.
- Show ADS-B Towers show the location on the Map of the ADS-B Towers currently being received.
- WiFi Settings implements WiFi security for the Stratus local network. Disabling SSID Broadcast makes your network's name invisible to other iPads/ iPhones, preventing them from joining your Stratus network unless they know the name of the network. Enabling WPA2 Security allows you to add a passcode to your device's WiFi which must be entered in the WPA2 Passcode box when joining the network. Changes to the Stratus WiFi Settings require that the device be restarted. Note: If you forget the Network name or WPA2 passcode you set for your device, perform a factory reset to return it to default conditions: SSID Broadcast - Enabled, WPA Security - OFF, and no passcode. You can perform a factory reset by holding the Stratus power button for 30 seconds

- Ignore Mfg. AHRS Settings (Stratus 2 and 2S) when ON, Stratus will automatically recalibrate its AHRS every time it is powered on. It is recommended that this setting remain OFF unless the Stratus is providing subpar AHRS readings, which can happen after the Stratus is dropped or subjected to very large temperature variations. If you are receiving subpar AHRS readings, turn this setting ON and power cycle the Stratus while keeping the device as stationary as possible. The setting should then be turned back to OFF.
- Save AHRS Calibration (Stratus 2 and 2S) when ON, Stratus will save a manual AHRS calibration between power cycles so it does not automatically re-adjust to straight and level every time it is turned back on. This setting is useful for pilots who cannot calibrate the Stratus on the ground due to their aircraft (or Stratus device) not being straight and level, such as with tail dragger aircraft. Note: The use of this feature depends on the Stratus not being moved after it is calibrated; moving the Stratus between flights will cause the saved calibration to become inaccurate, requiring a re-calibration during the next flight.
- Flight Data Recorder (Stratus 2/2S only) when "Enabled " is ON, Stratus will begin recording a track log as soon as it is turned on and the GPS senses motion (see <u>Stratus Flight Data Recorder</u> for more information)
- Track Logs (Stratus 2/2S only) tap to view any track logs recorded by Stratus.
- Auto-Detect Segments (Stratus 2S only) when ON, Stratus will automatically detect trip segments based on your ground speed and create a separate track log for each segment.
- GPS Satellite Status shows location and signal lock for GPS satellites currently visible.

#### Stratus ESG (Stratus 1S/2/2S Only)

Stratus ESG is Appareo's all-in-one certified ADS-B Out transponder solution. The Stratus 1S, 2, or 2S can connect to Stratus ESG via USB cable (included in the Stratus ESG installation kit provided by the avionics dealer) to take advantage of the Stratus ESG's certified WAAS GPS receiver and aircraft-mounted ADS-B antenna to boost GPS accuracy and provide improved ADS-B In tower reception. When connected via the USB cable, the Stratus ESG also supplies power to the Stratus 1S, 2, or 2S to keep the battery charged.

When a Stratus 1S, 2, or 2S is connected to the Stratus ESG, the Accuracy instrument in ForeFlight's Instrument Panel will show "Accuracy (ESG)" to indicate that it is receiving GPS position data from the ESG.

#### Stratus Replay (Stratus 1S/2/2S Only)

Stratus Replay saves the last 30 minutes of ASD-B weather information received by the device, including NEXRAD Radar, METARs, TAFs, etc. Stratus Replay automatically sends saved data to ForeFlight when you reopen the app after sleeping the iPad or iPhone, or switching from another app. This allows you to conserve battery life by opening ForeFlight only when needed without fear of missing useful ADS-B weather information.

Stratus Replay requires that the device be updated to Firmware v1.4 or later for a Stratus 2 and v1.0 or later for a 1S/2S. See <u>Stratus Firmware Update</u> for instructions on updating the Stratus firmware. **NOTE**: Stratus Replay is not available with the Stratus 1.

You can check the Stratus Replay status by tapping the Map Settings "gear" button and then choosing Stratus, or on **More** > **Devices** > **Stratus** > **Status**.

	3
rid & Traffic 👻 🗘	≡ ⊗ ⊘
Fathana Stratus Sta	tue
Stratus Sta	ius
DEVICE	Yes
Battery	92%
Power Source	Battery
Serial Number	
Firmware	1.4.0.396
Driver Version	2.5.1
DATA	
General NOTAMs	1 >
Local Radar Update	16 mins ago
National Radar Update	None
Radar Frames	2
Text Update	3 mins ago
Text Report Count	253
Receiving From	0 Towers >
STRATUS REPLAY	
Status	Up-to-date

#### **Stratus Flight Data Recorder**

The Flight Data Recorder feature allows a Stratus 2/2S to save a Track Log file of your flights. The Track Log file includes your position, speed and altitude data throughout each of your flights, and it can be saved regardless of whether you record a <u>Track Log</u> in ForeFlight Mobile.

When activated, the Flight Data Recorder will save up to approximately 20 hours of data, and will automatically delete the oldest track log file from the device to make room to record the new track log file. The Flight Data Recorder becomes available with Firmware v1.6 for a Stratus 2 and v1.0 for a Stratus 2S.

### **Recording a Track Log Using the Flight Data Recorder**

Turn on the Flight Data Recorder on the Maps page by tapping the **Maps Settings** (gear button) then tapping **Stratus Status**. Alternatively you can tap **More > Devices** > **Stratus > Status** and slide the "Enabled" switch to ON.



Track log files will begin recording automatically as soon as the Stratus 2/2S is turned on and the GPS senses motion.

The Track Log file will record until the device is turned off, unless "Auto-Detect Segments" is turned ON, in which case a Track Log will stop recording when Stratus detects a full-stop landing, and another Track Log will be started. Once the device is turned back on, the most recent Track Log file or files will be shown in the "Track Logs" section, accessed by tapping below the Enabled switch.

Tap "Track Logs" to see any track logs recorded by the Stratus 2/2S. To save a Track Log to ForeFlight Mobile, tap the "Cloud" icon next to the Track Log.

Pad 🅈		2.20 PM			🕈 59N 🗖 D	
		Stratus Status	Stratus 2 Track	Logs	Clear	
Downloads	5	TODAY				
Accounts	3	34.52°N/117.30 Oct 01, 2014 12 1516m	TW + 34.50"N/117.	29"W	6	
Aircraft	2	34.50'N/117.29'W + 34.52'N/117.30'W		30'W		
Weight & Balance	2	Oct 01, 2014 11:06 AM PDT			G	
Settings	3					
User Waypoints	), j					
Track Logs	2					
Devices	•					
About	3					
Diagnostic						

Once that Track Log has been saved to ForeFlight Mobile, you can transfer it to your ForeFlight account where it can be viewed and shared like other Track Logs. Disconnect your iPad from the Stratus 2/2S WiFi network, connect to the Internet, then tap **More > Track Logs** and tap the "Cloud" icon next to that Track log. See <u>Viewing Track Logs on your ForeFlight Account</u> for more details.

When connected to a Stratus 2/2S, Track Logs can also be accessed directly from the **More > Track Logs** page by tapping the **Stratus Logs** button.



#### **Stratus Firmware Update**

Appareo, the manufacturer of the Stratus ADS-B receivers, periodically releases updated firmware to activate new capabilities or fix issues. This firmware can be installed by ForeFlight Mobile. For more information, please watch this video: <u>https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=r-5spKWk40Y</u>

Before beginning the update process, make sure that your iPad or iPhone AND the Stratus each have enough battery power to run for at least 15 minutes. If you are unsure, plug each device in to an appropriate charger.

Turn the Stratus ON, then open Apple Settings, tap WiFi and connect your iPad or iPhone to the Stratus WiFi network.

Open ForeFlight Mobile, then go to the Devices view and tap the Stratus button.

Then tap the "Tap to Update" on the Firmware row: Firmware 1.1 - Tap to Update > to begin the update. Once the update is complete, tap the "Close" button to return to ForeFlight Mobile.

**IMPORTANT:** The Stratus will reboot during the firmware update process. When this happens, if there is a known WiFi network in range your iPad or iPhone will reconnect to the other WiFi network. This will cause an error message at the end of the update process since ForeFlight Mobile is no longer connected to the Stratus WiFi network and cannot verify the firmware update.

If this happens, simply quit ForeFlight Mobile, re-connect your iPad or iPhone to the Stratus WiFi network, re-open ForeFlight Mobile and go to the Devices, Stratus page. Verify that the new Stratus Firmware version is listed.

You can avoid this error message either by doing the update in an area with no other WiFi networks, or by, before starting the update, opening Apple Settings, tapping WiFi and "forgetting" any WiFi networks to which your iPad or iPhone may automatically connect.

# **GARMIN CONNEXT**

The Garmin Connext system allows ForeFlight Mobile to receive GPS position data, ADS-B weather and ADS-B traffic from select Garmin avionics by connecting to a Garmin Flight Stream 110, 210, or 510 bluetooth gateway. The Flight Stream 210 also includes an AHRS sensor, providing pitch and bank information to the attitude display in ForeFlight Mobile, and supports two-way flight plan transfer between ForeFlight Mobile and select Garmin navigation displays. ForeFlight Mobile does not currently support receiving XM Weather or music through a Flight Stream.

### **Pairing with Flight Stream**

Once a Garmin avionics dealer has correctly installed a Flight Stream 110, 210, or 510 and connected it to your Garmin avionics, open Apple Settings and tap the Bluetooth tab on the left. If your Flight Stream is already in Bluetooth pairing mode it will appear in the list of available Bluetooth devices and you can tap on the entry to connect. If it doesn't appear, follow the instructions provided with the Flight Stream to enable Bluetooth pairing mode, then tap the Flight Stream entry to pair it with your device.

iPad		10:23	≱ 100% 페
Settings		Bluetooth	
E Airplane Mode	$\mathcal{D}$	Bluetooth	
ᅙ Wi-Fi	Off	Now discoverable as "FFQA Air_R".	
Bluetooth	On	MY DEVICES	
🕼 Cellular Data	Off	Flight Stream 210 64DC	Connected (i)

### **Using Connext**

After pairing with the Flight Stream, open ForeFlight Mobile and tap on More > Devices. You should see a box for Garmin Connext indicating that the connection is established and listing the data being received through the Flight Stream.



09:29

Devices

Tapping this box will open the device's status page, providing detailed information about the device and the data being received from it. In addition to the Flight Stream, the status page will also show any Garmin avionics that are connected to the Flight Stream.

"Attitude from access point" indicates whether AHRS data is being provided by the Flight Stream 210 (the "access point" to the chain of Connext devices) or from another device in the chain.

If connected to a GNS or GTN unit with a route loaded, the details of that route will also be displayed. Tap on the route to load it into ForeFlight Mobile's NavLog.

**IMPORTANT: DO NOT PRESS** the "Reset AHRS" button at the bottom of the Settings page unless specifically directed to by the ForeFlight Pilot Support Team or your Garmin Avionics dealer.

STATUS Connected Connected FLIGHT STREAM 210 Model 010-01194-40 3BE001849 Serial Version 2.20 0 Revision GTN 725 5.13 Version **GDL 88** Version 3.20 SOURCES GTN 725 **GPS** Source Attitude from access point Yes CAPABILITIES GPS, attitude, flight plan send/receive, pressure altit... ROUTE Route KAUS AUS4, ABI LBB ILS OR LOC RWY 26 KLBB

Garmin Connext

\$ 42%

**Reset AHRS** 

#### GPS and ADS-B from Connext

When GPS data is being sent from the Flight Stream to ForeFlight Mobile, the Accuracy instrument will show "Accuracy (Connext)".



When an ADS-B overlay such as Radar or Traffic is selected on the Maps view, the number of ADS-B towers being received by the Flight Stream is shown in the upper-left corner of the view below the timestamp indicating when the last update was received.



#### Sending a Route to Connext (requires Flight Stream 210 or 510)

On an iPad, tap the Panel button at the top of the Maps view and tap "Send to Panel", or tap the Send To button in the bottom-right corner of the NavLog and tap the Panel button to send a route to a GNS 430W/530W or GTN 600/700 series GPS navigator. NOTE: Flight Stream 510 only supports route transfer to GTN 600/700 series GPS navigators.



On an iPhone, tap Menu, scroll to the Route section and choose the Route. Then tap the "Send to" button in the bottom-right and tap "Panel."


After sending the route a pop-up will open in ForeFlight confirming that the route has been successfully sent to the panel. Tap "OK" to dismiss the pop-up.

**NOTE**: Different Garmin GPS navigators support different numbers of waypoints per route. If you attempt to send a route with a too many waypoints for the installed Garmin GPS, the transfer will be rejected. A possible solution for this is to go to More > Settings > Route View and change the Airway Decoding setting to "Bends Only", which will remove any waypoints that do not result in a change in course. The route must be re-entered for this setting to be applied. After re-entering, you can re-send the route to the Garmin GPS via the Flight Stream 210 or 510.

#### Getting a Route from Connext (requires Flight Stream 210 or 510)

On an iPad, tap the "Panel" button at the top of the Maps view and tap "Load from Panel" to load a route from your Connext navigator to the ForeFlight Mobile NavLog.

On an iPhone, go to Menu > Devices > Connext and scroll down to the Route section. Tap the route to load it into your NavLog.

When "Auto-Receive from Panel" is enabled, changes to your route in the Connext device produce a notification in ForeFlight Mobile prompting you to load the modified route into your NavLog, with options to Load Route or Ignore. When "Auto-Receive from Panel" is disabled, changes to your route in the Connext device do not produce a notification. This

Load Route	e from Panel? CLL KIAD
Ignore	Load Route

setting is also available in More > Settings > Map View as "Auto-Receive Panel Flight Plans".

#### **Calibrating Flight Stream 210 AHRS**

The FlightStream 210 AHRS can be calibrated by tapping the AHRS Setting button in the attitude display, above the fullscreen button. This will activate Zero Pitch & Bank mode and a blue Save button will appear in the upper left corner of the display. Adjust your aircraft so that it is straight and level, tap the Zero Pitch & Bank button to zero the display, and tap the Save button to save the AHRS calibration.



Note: AHRS calibration should only be performed while in level, unaccelerated flight, or while stationary and level on the ground. Calibrating the device while accelerating or decelerating may result in errors in pitch and bank information.

# GARMIN GTX 345

Garmin's GTX 345 ADS-B Out/In transponder can provide ForeFlight with WAAS GPS position data, ADS-B weather and traffic, pressure altitude, and AHRS information to drive ForeFlight's attitude indicator and Synthetic Vision. The GTX 345 appears in More > Devices as "Garmin Connext", although it can connect directly to ForeFlight via Bluetooth and does not require a separate Flight Stream.

#### **Connecting to GTX 345**

After your GTX 345 is installed in your aircraft by a certified Garmin avionics dealer, follow the instructions included with it to enable Bluetooth pairing mode. On your mobile device, open **Apple Settings** > **Bluetooth** and select the GTX 345 from the list of available devices. The GTX 345 can pair with up to two devices at once.



#### Using GTX 345

Once you've paired with the GTX 345 via Bluetooth, open ForeFlight and tap **More** > **Devices** to confirm the connection was recognized by ForeFlight and see what information is being received from the GTX 345. GPS is only shown here when a location fix has been established, so it may take a minute to appear immediately after the GTX 345 is powered on.



Tap the box to view the details of the GTX 345 and the data being received from it.

There are two settings that can be adjusted at the bottom of the GTX 345 status page:

Logging - used only for diagnosing problems, this manages logging of ADS-B data stream received by GTX 345. Leave this OFF normally, as it reduces app performance.

Show ADS-B Towers - show the location on the Map of the ADS-B Towers currently being received.

The GTX 345 ARHS pitch/roll values (used to drive the Synthetic Vision display) must be initially calibrated by your avionics shop at the time of installation.

#### GPS and ADS-B from GTX 345

When GPS data is being sent from the GTX 345 to ForeFlight, the Accuracy instrument will show "Accuracy (Connext)".

When an ADS-B overlay such as Radar or Traffic is selected on the Maps view, the number of ADS-B towers being received by the GTX 345 is shown in the upper-left corner of the view below the timestamp indicating when the last update was received.







#### **Calibrating the GTX 345 AHRS**

The GTX 345 AHRS can be calibrated by tapping the AHRS Setting button in the attitude display, above the fullscreen button. This will activate Zero Pitch & Bank mode and a blue Save button will appear in the upper left corner of the display.

Adjust your aircraft so that it is straight and level, tap the Zero Pitch & Bank button to zero the display, and tap the Save button to save the AHRS calibration.



Note: AHRS calibration should only be performed while in level, unaccelerated flight, or while stationary and level on the ground. Calibrating the device while accelerating or decelerating may result in errors in pitch and bank information.

## GARMIN GDL 39

ForeFlight can connect to Garmin's GDL 39, GDL 39-3D, and GDL 39-R ADS-B receivers, which provide ADS-B weather and traffic, GPS position, pressure altitude, and AHRS information (GDL 39-3D) to power ForeFlight's attitude indicator and Synthetic Vision. The GDL 39 appears in More > Devices as "Garmin Connext", although it can connect directly to ForeFlight via Bluetooth and does not require a separate Flight Stream.

#### **Connecting to GDL 39**

After turning on the GDL 39, open **Apple Settings** > **Bluetooth** and tap "GDL39" to connect to the device.

iPad 🤤	2		12:42 PM	* 7% 🗁
	Settings	3	Bluetooth	
₽	Airplane Mode	$\bigcirc$	Bluetooth	
?	Wi-Fi	ForeFlight Test	Now discoverable as "iPad Pro Mini 1".	
*	Bluetooth	On	MY DEVICES	
( <sub>(A</sub> ))	Cellular Data		GDL39	Connected ()

#### Using GDL 39

Once you've paired with the GDL 39 via Bluetooth, open ForeFlight and tap **More** > **Devices** to confirm the connection was recognized by ForeFlight and see what information is being received from the GDL 39.



Tap the box to view the details of the GDL 39 and the data being received from it.

There are three settings that can be adjusted at the bottom of the GDL 39 status page:

Logging - used only for diagnosing problems, this manages logging of ADS-B data stream received by GDL 39. Leave this OFF normally, as it reduces app performance.

Show ADS-B Towers - show the location on the Map of the ADS-B Towers currently being received.

Pressurized Cabin - enabling this will cause the GDL 39 to stop sending pressure altitude readings to ForeFlight, since those readings become inaccurate when the device is in a pressurized cabin.

**IMPORTANT: DO NOT PRESS** the "Reset AHRS" button at the bottom of the Settings page unless specifically directed to by the ForeFlight Pilot Support Team or your Garmin Avionics dealer.

**Reset AHRS** 

#### GPS and ADS-B from GDL 39

When GPS data is being sent from the GDL 39 to ForeFlight, the Accuracy instrument will show "Accuracy (Connext)".

When an ADS-B overlay such as Radar or Traffic is selected on the Maps view, the number of ADS-B towers being received by the GDL 39 is shown in the upper-left corner of the view below the timestamp indicating when the last update was received.







#### **Calibrating GDL 39 3D AHRS**

The GDL 39 3D AHRS can be calibrated by tapping the AHRS Setting button in the attitude display, above the fullscreen button. This will activate Zero Pitch & Bank mode and a blue Save button will appear in the upper left corner of the display. Adjust your aircraft so that it is straight and level, tap the Zero Pitch & Bank button to zero the display, and tap the Save button to save the AHRS calibration.



Note: AHRS calibration should only be performed while in level, unaccelerated flight, or while stationary and level on the ground. Calibrating the device while accelerating or decelerating may result in errors in pitch and bank information.

## L-3 LYNX

ForeFlight can connect to L-3's Lynx line of ADS-B transceivers, including the NGT-9000, -2000, and -2500 models to receive ADS-B traffic and weather and GPS position via Wi-Fi in ForeFlight.

#### **Connecting to Lynx**

After the Lynx has been installed in your aircraft, open **Apple Settings** > **Wi-Fi** and select "LynxWiFi" to connect to the Lynx's Wi-Fi network. **NOTE**: In order to communicate with ForeFlight, the Lynx setting "Wi-Fi Dongle Application" needs to be set to "Other" (which corresponds to port 4000) via the setup software tools menu. Contact your L-3 avionics installer for information or to have this setting changed.



#### **Using Lynx**

Once you've joined the Lynx's Wi-Fi network, open ForeFlight and tap **More** > **Devices** to confirm the connection was recognized by ForeFlight and see what information is being received from the Lynx (see the note above if the Lynx is not appearing on this screen).



Tap the box to view the details of the Lynx and the data being received from it.

There are two settings that can be adjusted at the bottom of the Lynx status page:

Logging - used only for diagnosing problems, this manages logging of the ADS-B data stream received by the Lynx. Leave this OFF normally, as it reduces app performance.

Show ADS-B Towers - show the location on the Map of the ADS-B Towers currently being received.

#### **GPS and ADS-B from Lynx**

When GPS data is being sent from the Lynx to ForeFlight, the Accuracy instrument will show "Accuracy (L3 Lynx)". **NOTE**: Due to how ADS-B GPS accuracy is calculated and reported by the Lynx, the accuracy shown in ForeFlight may be worse than what it actually is. This is because the Lynx uses a limited number of "buckets" to report GPS accuracy to ForeFlight Mobile:

10:52 AM		<b>1</b> 🕴 99% 📂
Devices	L3 Lynx NGT-90	00
STATUS		
Connected		Connected
GPS Position		Valid
Firmware		1.4
DATA		
General NOTAN	ls	3 >
Local Radar Up	date	2 mins ago
National Radar	Update	7 mins ago
Radar Frames		3
Text Update		Moments ago
Text Report Cou	unt	447
Receiving From		1 Tower >
TRAFFIC		
Traffic Update (	978/UAT)	Moments ago
Traffic Update (	1090)	None
Traffic Update (	TIS-B)	None
Ownship ADS-E	3 Out	Detected: N123FF >
SETTINGS		
Logging		
Show ADSB Tow	vers	

Lynx GPS Accuracy	GPS Accuracy shown in ForeFlight Mobile
Between 30m and >10m	30m
Between 10m and >3m	10m
3m or better	3m

When an ADS-B overlay such as Radar or Traffic is selected on the Maps view, the number of ADS-B towers being received by the Lynx is shown in the upper-left corner of the view below the timestamp indicating when the last update was received.





# AVIDYNE IFD 550/540/440

ForeFlight can connect to Avidyne's IFD 550, 540, and 440 panel avionics via Wi-Fi to receive GPS position and flight plans sent to ForeFlight. Flight plans cannot currently be sent from ForeFlight Mobile to the IFD 550/540/440.

#### Connecting to IFD 540/440

After the Avidyne device has been installed in your aircraft and powered on, open Apple Settings > Wi-Fi and select "LIO\_WiFi" to connect to the Avidyne's Wi-Fi network.



#### Getting a Route from IFD 550/540/440

Open ForeFlight and tap More > Devices to see the capabilities being provided by the Avidyne. Tap on the box to open the Avidyne's status page. If a route is currently loaded in the Avidyne it will appear at the bottom of the status page under Route. Tap on it to load the route into ForeFlight.

![](_page_262_Picture_7.jpeg)

You can also load routes on an iPad from the Maps view: tap the Panel button at the top of the Maps view while connected to the Avidyne and tap "Load from Panel" to load the route into ForeFlight.

![](_page_263_Picture_1.jpeg)

If the route contains waypoints not supported by ForeFlight they will appear in the app as Lat/Long waypoints.

iPad 🗢 🐇			09:54				98% 📖 +
VFR & TFRs	- Ø	📰 🚱 🕪 ⊘			* O	Search wayp	oint ID or r 🛈
08:57 PST	N3733G	30.22°N/97.67°W CWK BAS		AQO		Procedure	
	135 kts					Reverse	
	16.0 gph					Routes	A Anna and
	7,000'				Clear	08:40 CDT	
Charles and An	Distance 88nm ETE 0h41m Wit	Fuel 12.8g nds aloft included (7 kts headwind)	Edit	NavLog	Profile 🌓	★ 山	Tanta and
- THE AN	The File		AN X So		32		Martin And

On an iPhone, tap Menu > Devices > Avidyne then tap the Route to load it into your NavLog.

#### GPS from IFD 550/540/440

When GPS data is being sent from the Avidyne to ForeFlight, the Accuracy instrument will show "Accuracy (Avidyne IFD540/440)", though some text will be cut out due to its length.

![](_page_263_Picture_7.jpeg)

# **DYNON SKYVIEW**

ForeFlight has partnered with Dynon Avionics to bring secure WiFi connectivity between ForeFlight Mobile and the Dynon SkyView glass panel avionics system. This connectivity allows flight plans to be transferred between ForeFlight Mobile and the SkyView, and for ForeFlight Mobile to receive GPS and AHRS data from the SkyView.

To connect your ForeFlight Mobile with your Dynon SkyView, you will need:

- A Dynon WiFi adapter for each SkyView screen.
- SkyView version 12.0 or later in each SkyView screen.
- ForeFlight Mobile version 6.7 or later.

#### **Configuring SkyView WiFi**

See the SkyView documentation for instructions on installing and configuring the SkyView WiFi adapter and setting the network password.

#### **Connecting ForeFlight and SkyView**

With the SkyView system ON, open Apple Settings > WiFi and tap the SkyView-XXXXX WiFi network, then enter the password to connect.

iPad ᅙ			09:50	100% 🔜 🔸
	Set	tings	Wi-Fi	
-	•	$\sim$		
<b>?</b>	Wi-Fi	SkyView-FFTEST	Wi-Fi	
*	Bluetooth	Off		
( <sup>(</sup> A))	Cellular Data	a Off	Skyview-FFTEST	• • 1

**IMPORTANT:** If your iPad has the Cellular Data option it should be switched **OFF.** iPhones should have **Airplane Mode** switched **ON**, with **WiFi** then turned back **ON**.

#### Sending a Route to SkyView

On an iPad, open the NavLog, tap the "Send to" button and tap "Panel", or tap the Panel button at the top of the Maps view and tap "Send to Panel."

![](_page_265_Picture_2.jpeg)

On an iPhone, tap Menu, scroll to the Route section and choose the Route. Then tap the "Send to" button in the bottom-right and tap "Panel."

![](_page_265_Picture_4.jpeg)

After sending the route a pop-up will open in ForeFlight confirming that the route has been successfully sent to the SkyView. Tap "OK" to dismiss the pop-up.

A pop-up will also open on the SkyView indicating that the route has been successfully received.

1	
14	Sent
n	Flight plan sent
J	
	ОК

![](_page_266_Picture_3.jpeg)

#### Getting a Route from SkyView

You can view if SkyView has a route available to send to ForeFlight Mobile on an iPad in More > Devices > SkyView > Route; or on the Maps view, tap the Maps "Settings" button and scroll to the bottom of the menu. Then tap the "SkyView" entry at the bottom of the list. On an iPhone, look in Menu > Devices > SkyView > Route.

00-31	10	0.0	•••© T-Mobile 🕈	11:37 AM	<b>1 \$ 80% </b> ■•
Devices SkyVi	W.		Devices	SkyView	
TATUS			STATUS		
Connected	Conne	ected	Connected		Connected
fake	Dynon Avionics	, Inc.	SKYVIEW		
fodel	D1000/	D700	Make	Dyn	on Avionics, Inc.
lame	Sky	View	Model		D1000/D700
erial Number	00	2163	Name		SkyView
ystem ID	FF	TEST	Serial Number		_
P:Port	10.177.8.115	8384	System ID		8
ast Update	2015-08-13 08:	31:13	IP:Port	10	).177.8.115:8384
ETTINGS			Last Update	2016	5-06-24 11:37:46
oore			CAPABILITIES		
IOUTE WK BASIS EVILE SJT TANKR STEEP DEWEY JOKI US. LACIB AMPLE BRUKK SUNED YKM GLEED T	S MIPEE MAF PIZON ANEEL GECKE	5	GPS, attitude, air	data with attitude,	flight plan
LAKO KSEA			ROUTE		
			Route		KAUS KDFW >
	. 21@				
	Devices     SkyVie       ATUS     >       xnnected     >       ske     >       odel     >       xme     >       trial Number     >       rstem ID     >       :Port     >       tst Update     >       TTINGS     >       IVTE     >       Suite     >       Suite     >       Suite     >       Suite     >       Suite     >       Suite     >       Decomment     Emalery	Devices     SkyView       ATUS       Jnnected       Conne       ske     Dynon Avionics       odel     Dinoo/       odel     Dinoo/       ume     Sky       rial Number     00       ristem ID     FF       :Port     10.177.6.115       ust Update     2015-08-13.08:       TITINGS     10.177.6.115       WK BASIS EVILE SJIT TANKIR STEEP DEWEY JOKES MIPEE MAF PIZON ANEEL GECKE       WK, BASIS EVILE SJIT TANKIR STEEP DEWEY JOKES MIPEE MAF PIZON ANEEL GECKE       SJL, ACRIB AMPLE BRUKK SUNED YKM GLEED TITION CADED CHINS RADDY HUMPP       AND KEAN	SkyVfew       ATUS       Atle       Opynon Avionics, Inc.       odel       D1000/D700       Attention       Attenion       Attenion	Devices       SkyView         ATUS       STATUS         ATUS       Connected         Status       Connected         ske       Dynon Avionics, Inc.         odel       D1000/D700         Make       SkyView         urial Number       002163         ristem ID       FFTEST         :Port       10.177.6.115.8384         ust Update       2015-08-13 08:31:13         TTINGS       System ID         Interset       CAPABILITIES         Mite       System ID         Introduction       CAPABILITIES         Mite       M	SkyView     ATUS        ATUS        ATUS              ATUS              ATUS

To transfer a route from a SkyView to an iPad, tap the "Panel" button at the top of the Maps view and tap "Load from Panel." You can also load a route shown on the SkyView status page in More > Devices > SkyView by tapping the route.

![](_page_267_Picture_4.jpeg)

On an iPhone, tap Menu > Devices > SkyView then tap the Route to load it into your NavLog.

#### GPS and ARHS data from SkyView

When GPS data is being sent from the SkyView to ForeFlight Mobile, the Accuracy instrument will show "Accuracy (SkyView)".

![](_page_268_Picture_2.jpeg)

When AHRS data is being sent from SkyView to ForeFlight Mobile, the ARHS source (displayed by tapping the "Gear" button above "AHRS") will show as SkyView.

![](_page_268_Picture_4.jpeg)

ForeFlight Mobile will be receiving the same AHRS data as is displayed on the SkyView screen(s) so no additional AHRS calibration is necessary in ForeFlight Mobile.

# **FREEFLIGHT ADS-B**

ForeFlight can receive ADS-B weather and Traffic data, as well as GPS position data from appropriately-equipped FreeFlight RANGR ADS-B systems.

#### **Connecting ForeFlight and FreeFlight RANGR**

After connecting to the FreeFlight RANGR WiFi network using Apple Settings > WiFi, tap More > Devices to confirm the FreeFlight box is displayed.

![](_page_269_Picture_4.jpeg)

Tap the FreeFlight box to see detailed information and settings for the FreeFlight RANGR.

12:15 PM	* 53% 🗖
Devices	FreeFlight
STATUS	
Connected	Connected
GPS Position	Valio
Temperature	42.5°C
Input Volts	11.91
Internal Volts	4.95
Boot Loader	1.0.1.80
Application	1.9.1.18
Firmware	1.:
GPS	1.10
DATA	
Local Radar Update	Moments age

#### GPS and ADS-B data from FreeFlight RANGR

When GPS data is being provided by the RANGR, the Accuracy instrument will show (FreeFlight).

![](_page_270_Picture_2.jpeg)

When an ADS-B overlay such as Radar or Traffic is selected on the Maps page, the number of ADS-B towers being received by the FreeFlight RANGR is shown in the upper-left corner of the page below the timestamp indicating when the last update was received.

## SIRIUSXM SXAR1

ForeFlight Mobile supports the SiriusXM SXAR1 portable, battery-powered weather receiver when used with a "Pilot for ForeFlight" SiriusXM weather data subscription. To purchase that subscription from SiriusXM, call SiriusXM Aviation at 1-855-838-8563 or visit <u>www.siriusxm.com/foreflight</u>.

![](_page_271_Figure_2.jpeg)

#### **Connecting ForeFlight to the SXAR1**

The SXAR1 uses Bluetooth to connect to a single iPad or iPhone at a time; simultaneous connections to multiple iPads or iPhones are not currently supported.

To pair your iPad or iPhone with SXAR1 turn the SXAR1 ON and once the lights on top start to illuminate, open Apple Settings and go to the Bluetooth section.

iPad 🤶	9:03 AM 7 \$ 84%
Settings	Bluetooth
E Airplane Mode	Bluetooth
ᅙ Wi-Fi	Now discoverable as "iPad".
Bluetooth On	MY DEVICES
	Apple Wireless Keyboard Not Connected (i)
O Notifications	SXM_GTL7747G Connected (i)

Tap the SXM\_###### entry to pair with your iPad. NOTE: The letters and numbers after "SXM\_" in the list of Bluetooth devices are your RadioID, which may be needed when subscribing, re-activating, or resetting your "Pilot for ForeFlight" SiriusXM weather data subscription.

#### SXAR1 Available Weather Data

ForeFlight Mobile can display these weather data items from the SXAR1:

- High Resolution Composite (NEXRAD) Radar, including coverage of areas of southern Canada and northern Mexico
- High Resolution Lowest-tilt (NEXRAD) Radar, including coverage of areas of Canada and northern Mexico
   NOTE: for either Composite or Lowest Tilt radars, see radar color vs. intensity legends for Rain, Mixed Rain/Snow, and Snow.
- NEXRAD Storm Cell Attributes and track markers.
- Echo Tops, covering CONUS, northern Mexico, and southern Canada.
- Cloud Tops, covering CONUS, northern Mexico, and southern Canada.
- Surface Wind derived from METARs at Airports, shows wind speed and direction at those locations only.

- Surface Wind Analysis derived from a forecast model, shows wind speed and direction at 10 meters above the surface at tens of thousands of evenly spaced points across the country.
- Lightning
- Temporary Flight Restrictions (TFRs) on Maps SEE IMPORTANT NOTICE BELOW
- Winds Aloft Graphical
- Temperatures Aloft
- Dewpoint spread
- METARs/TAFs
- ♣ AIRMETS/SIGMETS
- PIREPS
- Radar Coverage Map

### **TFRs IMPORTANT NOTICE:**

While using a SXAR1 receiver, up-to-date graphical TFR information is ONLY displayed if you select the TFR Map overlay.

However if the FAA publishes a TFR without associated graphical shape information it may not be possible for ForeFlight Mobile to show the graphical TFR on the Maps page.

Therefore you should also check the Airports page, under NOTAMs > TFRs for airports along your route, and contact ATC or FSS to confirm that your route does not cross any such TFRs

TFR data may not be updated or displayed if your iPad is "asleep", is not connected to the SXAR1, if the SXAR1 receiver is not receiving data from XM satellites, or if the XM satellite data does not include information about that TFR.

Storm cell attributes show the height of the cell in 100's of feet. Tap the marker to view details about the speed and direction of travel. Storm cell track markers show the projected direction of travel of the cell, and where it is projected to be in 20, 40, and 60 minutes from the time of the Radar update.

The storm cell track markers, storm cell attributes, and other weather symbols (see below) are all based on the latest Radar frame received, so do not animate if you tap the Radar 'play' button.

Tap on other weather symbol, such as Hail, to view additional details.

#### **SXAR1 Status Information**

Tap More > Devices > SXAR1, or from the Maps page tap the Maps Settings (gear) button and scroll down to SXAR1, to see device status and settings.

There are four settings that can be adjusted at the bottom of the SXAR1 status page:

Use as GPS - turn ON to use the SXAR1's internal GPS to provide position data to ForeFlight. Turn this OFF if you'd rather receive GPS data from another connected device, such as a Stratus 2S.

Dim LEDs - turn ON to dim the SXAR1's status lights, which helps preserve battery life and reduces brightness when flying at night.

Logging - used only for diagnosing problems, this manages logging of XM data stream received by SXAR1. Leave this OFF normally, as it reduces app performance.

![](_page_274_Picture_10.jpeg)

![](_page_274_Picture_11.jpeg)

![](_page_274_Picture_12.jpeg)

Background Data Connection - when ON, SXAR1 will continue to send updated weather data to ForeFlight even when it is in the background. We recommend leaving this ON, because turning it OFF can result in the loss of Bluetooth connection to SXAR1 if ForeFlight is kept in the background.

#### SiriusXM Satellite Radio

With a SiriusXM Satellite Radio subscription, an add-on to the "Pilot for ForeFlight" SiriusXM weather data subscription, you can listen to SiriusXM radio while in-flight via a Bluetooth audio device. This can be a single headset with Bluetooth audio, or an intercom with Bluetooth audio interface, or a Bluetooth audio adapter plugged-in to a "music-in" jack in your aircraft's panel and wired-in to the intercom.

**IMPORTANT**: the SiriusXM satellite radio does NOT play directly through the iPad or iPhone speaker or headphone jack. You MUST connect a Bluetooth audio device per the instructions below.

Playing a satellite radio stream is controlled by the interface in ForeFlight Mobile, but the audio is sent directly from the SXAR1 to the Bluetooth audio device. This means the audio will continue to play if you sleep ForeFlight Mobile.

To add SiriusXM Audio to your existing subscription, call 855-838-8563 or visit <u>https://care.siriusxm.com/login\_view.action</u> to upgrade. For more information about the "Pilot for ForeFlight" plan, visit <u>https://www.siriusxm.com/foreflight</u>.

After adding the subscription to your plan, you will see "Audio: Active >" below the ForeFlight subscription in More > Devices > SXAR1.

DEVICE INFORMATION	
Radio ID	GTL7747B
Subscription	ForeFlight
Audio	Active >

If "Active" does not show, position the SXAR1 so it has a clear view of the sky, then send a refresh signal to your radio by visiting <u>http://www.siriusxm.com/refresh</u>.

#### Connecting a Bluetooth audio device to the SXAR1

To listen to satellite radio programming you must connect a Bluetooth audio device to the SXAR1. To begin the connection process, tap More > Devices > SXAR1 > Audio, or on the Maps page tap the Maps Settings button, then scroll down to the SXAR1 and tap the "Audio >" line.

![](_page_276_Picture_2.jpeg)

To connect to a Bluetooth audio device for the first time, turn it on and make sure it is in pairing mode. If that Bluetooth audio device was previously paired to your iPad or iPhone, you should "forget" that pairing in Apple Settings so that the device will be available to connect to the SXAR1. **NOTE**: many Bluetooth audio devices automatically enter pairing mode when first turned-on, as long as no other previously-paired devices are nearby.

Once the Bluetooth audio device is on and in pairing mode, tap "Bluetooth Audio" to initiate the connection from the SXAR1 to the Bluetooth audio device.

![](_page_277_Picture_0.jpeg)

Tap the name of the device to which you would like the SXAR1 to connect. The "spinner" will appear and when the pairing is complete, the connected device will show in the "My Devices" section and audio should begin playing. To disconnect the device, or to forget it completely (which would require re-pairing) tap the "i" next to the device name, then choose the desired option.

✔ Bluetooth Audio		
Disconnect		
Forget this device		

#### **SXAR1 Audio Controls**

![](_page_278_Figure_1.jpeg)

You can tune to a new channel by tapping the Category then Channel, or by typing the Channel number or name (full or partial) in the "Tune or Search" box. A vertical scroll bar shows when there are more Channels or Categories than can be shown, and blue speaker icon shows in the currently-playing Category and Channel.

Aero & TFRs 🔻 🗘 FPL 🚱		Aero & TFRs 🔻 🗱 FPL 🛞	0
Radio Categories		Categories Country	
Q Tune or Search		Q Tune or Search	
Рор	>	Ch. 55 Garth Channel	
Rock	Scroll bar,	Ch. 56 The Highway	
R&B	indicating more	Ch. 57 No Shoes Radio 🖪	))
Dance/Electronic	> Categories below	Ch. 58 Prime Country	
Country 🔹	Currently playing	Ch. 59 Willie's Rdhouse	
Christian	5	Ch. 60 Outlaw Country	
Jzz/Stndrd/Clscl	Tap to tune	Ch. 61 Y2Kountry	
Kids	∑	Ch. 62 Bluegrass Junctn	
Sports	>	Ch. 350 RedWhite&Booze	

![](_page_279_Figure_0.jpeg)

For additional information about ForeFlight's support for SiriusXM Satellite Radio and troubleshooting tips, visit <u>https://foreflight.com/connect/siriusxm/support/</u>.

## BARON MOBILE LINK/WXWORX

The Baron Services Mobile Link plugs-in to a WXWorx XM WX receiver, and provides a WiFi connection so that ForeFlight Mobile can access the XM WX data. Please consult the Mobile Link documentation to learn how to setup and connect the device.

The Mobile Link firmware 2.0 or higher allows data access to up to 4 devices at a time. ForeFlight Mobile attempts to get data access whenever it is launched and again any time data is requested by the user. ForeFlight Mobile will release its access when the app is closed via the physical home button.

If a device or app has gained access to the data and does not release it properly, the Mobile Link will automatically release the access for that device after 60 seconds.

The Mobile Link status view in ForeFlight Mobile will state whether data access has been obtained, see the "Status information" section below for more information.

#### Mobile Link Available Weather Data

ForeFlight Mobile can display these weather data items from the Baron Mobile Link/WXWorx:

- Radar for any subscribed region, shown on Maps. See <u>radar color vs.</u> <u>intensity legend</u>.
- Satellite for any subscribed region, shown on Maps
- METARs and METAR-derived data shown on Maps, such as temperature
- TAFs
- Winds Aloft
- **TFRs on Maps SEE IMPORTANT NOTICE BELOW**
- PIREPs on Maps
- AIRMETs/SIGMETs on Maps
- Lightning on Maps (requires Mobile Link firmware version 2.0 or higher)

Data is accessed just as it is when on the ground using an Internet connection. There is no user-configuration required beyond ensuring the Wi-Fi connection to the Mobile Link is properly established.

#### **TFRs IMPORTANT NOTICE:**

While using a Baron Mobile Link XM WX receiver, up-to-date graphical TFR information is ONLY displayed if you select the TFR Map overlay.

However if the FAA publishes a TFR without associated graphical shape information it may not be possible for ForeFlight Mobile to show the graphical TFR on the Maps page.

Therefore you should also check the Airports page, under NOTAMs > TFRs for airports along your route, and contact ATC or FSS to confirm that your route does not cross any such TFRs

TFR data may not be updated or displayed if your iPad is "asleep", is not connected to the Baron Mobile Link, if the Baron Mobile Link receiver is not receiving data from XM satellites, or if the XM satellite data does not include information about that TFR.

#### **Mobile Link Status Information**

To learn the status of the Mobile Link connection, subscription, data availability and more, please use the Devices view as described above. When connected to the Mobile Link Wi-Fi access point, Mobile Link will be an option shown in the Devices view. Tap it to see full status information. This information is useful for troubleshooting if you experience problems with the Baron Mobile Link/WXWorx combination.

# **LogTen Integration**

ForeFlight Mobile can export routes or flight plans to the LogTen app, when LogTen is installed. To create a new logbook entry in LogTen based on a route, create the route on the Maps view and tap the **Send To** button in the Navigation Log. This will show LogTen as one option. Tap that to open LogTen and create a new log entry.

Logbook entries can also be created from the File & Brief view, once LogTen is installed on the iPad. Run ForeFlight Mobile, go to File & Brief and select the plan to export. Tap the blue LogTen button below the flight plan details list on the right to open LogTen with a new logbook entry.

# **Flight Simulator Integration**

## BEFORE USING A FLIGHT SIMULATOR WITH FOREFLIGHT MOBILE

The iPad (or iPhone) running ForeFlight Mobile must be on the same network as the flight simulator. Both the iPad running ForeFlight Mobile and the flight simulator can be connected to the network using WiFi, or the flight simulator computer can be connected to the WiFi router via Ethernet cable, while the iPad is connected via WiFi.

After setting-up a compatible flight simulator and activating its data connection (see below for instructions for popular flight simulators) open ForeFlight Mobile, tap **More** > **Devices**, then tap on the box containing the name of the flight simulator and slide the "Enabled" switch to ON.

For example if using X-Plane, in ForeFlight Mobile tap **More** > **Devices**, then tap the "X-Plane" box, then switch the Enabled switch ON:

iPad 👻		7:58 AM	🕈 97% 💼 Pad 👻		7:58 AM		1 9796 📑	
		Devices	0			Devices	X-Plane Details	
O Downloads	<b>33</b> >	X-Plane		O Downloads	<b>33</b> >	Enabled		
L Accounts	>	Connected		L Accounts	>			
🛨 Aircraft	>			🛨 Aircraft	>			
Settings		X-Plane provides GPS data.		Settings	>			

After connecting the flight simulator and turning the Enabled switch ON, verify that the iPad or iPhone is receiving simulated GPS data from the flight simulator by displaying the Accuracy instrument on the Instrument Panel on the Maps page.

# X-PLANE

ForeFlight Mobile can receive GPS input from the X-Plane flight simulator v10.11 or newer on any supported platform. To enable this feature in X-Plane, bring up the **Settings** > **Net Connections** menu. Change to the iPhone/iPad tab and check the appropriate ForeFlight box.

![](_page_284_Figure_0.jpeg)

## **INFINITE FLIGHT**

Infinite Flight (<u>http://www.infinite-flight.com</u>) is a flight simulator available for iOS (iPhone and iPad) and Android (phone and tablet). Infinite Flight version 15.04 or later (either iOS or Android) is able to send simulated position, attitude and traffic data to ForeFlight Mobile running on an iPad or iPhone, provided both devices are connected to the same WiFi network.

Open Infinite Flight, tap the "Gear" button in the upper-left corner 🔯, then scroll

down to the bottom of the list and tap the "Enable ForeFlight Link" switch ON.

If you are using Infinite Flight Live (additional charge), you can see the other traffic in your area in ForeFlight Mobile by tapping the Maps drop down and enabling the Traffic layer.

If Synthetic Vision is included in your ForeFlight subscription, tap the "AI" button to enable the SV splitscreen view showing color coded obstacles and terrain.

![](_page_285_Picture_4.jpeg)

![](_page_285_Figure_5.jpeg)

# PREPAR3D/FLIGHT SIMULATOR X

ForeFlight Mobile can receive GPS input from the Prepar3D or Flight Simulator X flight simulators over a WiFi network when the FSXFlight plug-in is installed on the flight simulator computer. For more information and instructions visit <u>www.fsxflight.com</u>.

Pilots who prefer a wired option can use the Cygnus Home Direct. For more information, visit

www.kingschools.com/pilot-supplies/flight-simulator/iPad-connection-wired

## REDBIRD

ForeFlight Mobile can receive GPS input from a Redbird simulator via the Cygnus Pro Wireless connection. For more information visit www.kingschools.com/pilot-supplies/flight-simulator/iPad-connection-bluetooth

# ELITE

ELITE 8.6 (Core, Premium, PCATD, BATD or AATD) can send GPS input to ForeFlight Mobile using the ELITE "Sim to App" iPad Connection Software, available for purchase at <u>www.flyelite.com/shop/sim-to-app-2/</u>

After installing the add-in, follow the included instructions to activate the connectivity with ForeFlight Mobile. NOTE: on the ELITE iPad Configuration screen in the ForeFlight box, press the "SEND" button corresponding either with Broadcast (to all iPads on your network) or to specific devices based on IP address.

![](_page_286_Picture_9.jpeg)

# AEROFLY FS 2

AeroFly FS 2 for the PC supports sending GPS position data to ForeFlight Mobile. To activate, first identify the IP address of your iPad by tapping **More** > **Devices**, then tap the "i" in the upper right hand corner of the screen. Record the numbers of the IP address labeled "Wi-Fi"; they will look something like this example: 192.168.1.119

Open AeroFly FS 2 Miscellaneous Settings, enter your iPad IP address into the "Broadcast IP address" box. Make sure the Broadcast IP port is set to: 49002, then click the "Broadcast flight info to IP address" ON.

![](_page_287_Figure_3.jpeg)

## **F**RASCA

Frasca simulators (<u>www.frasca.com</u>) can provide location information to ForeFlight Mobile using the Frasca Upgrade kit, which includes both WiFi and Bluetooth interfaces, as well as the Frasca NorthStar software that provides the simulated GPS position.

The WiFi interface is provided via a wireless router connected to the Frasca FSTD PC, and the Bluetooth interface is provided by a DUAL XGPS160 connected to the FSTD PC by USB cable.

![](_page_287_Picture_7.jpeg)

For information about purchase and installation of the upgrade kit in a Frasca simulator, please contact Frasca's Customer Service Department at (217) 344-9200 or <a href="mailto:support@frasca.com">support@frasca.com</a>.
# **Sharing Flights**

To share a flight on Twitter or via Email, create a route in Maps. Bring up the Nav Log, if it is not already showing, and tap the **Send To** button. Then tap either "Twitter" or "Email". Note that Twitter will not be an available option until you configure your twitter account in the main iPad Settings app. Twitter is also only available on iOS 5 and higher.

### TWITTER

Tapping the Twitter option will present a window similar to that shown below. Edit the text as desired and press Send to create the tweet.

	A STATE OF A STATE		
	Tweet		Send
adamhough	iton		
SKSGR IDU	4 BITER5 KAUS #Fo	reFlight	
ocation			77
	€adamhough 3 KSGR IDU4 ocation	Tweet adamhoughton KSGR IDU4 BITER5 KAUS #Fo	Tweet Padamhoughton SKSGR IDU4 BITER5 KAUS #ForeFlight

### **EMAIL**

Tapping the email option will show a view like that seen below. Provide the email address of the recipient and tap Send. Note that the email will include a link that other ForeFlight Customers can tap to open the route on their own iPad or iPhone.

Open I	n ForeF	light M	obile							
From	То	Head	ing		Totals			L	.eg	
KDEN	BINBE	222°M		17nm	1.8g	7m30s	17nm	1.1	8g 7	m30s
BINBE	FUNDS	255°M	(	59nm	7.6g	0h32m	52nn	1 5.1	8g 0	h24m
FUNDS	LAWSN	247°M	1	89nm	9.9g	0h41m	19nn	2.	39 9	m22s
A DATE OF A	HERLS	247°M		100nm	11.3g	0h47m	12nn	1.1.2	4g 5	m53s
LAWSIN	111011100									
HERLS	KASE 13 10:09:0 ve ForeFilg	204°M 7 +0000 ght Mobile	e? Dov	117nm vnload	13.1g	0h54m or your i	16nn Pad or if	n 1.4 Phone	8g 7	m29s
HERLS 2014-03-1 Don't hav	KASE 13 10:09:0 ve ForeFlig	204°M 7 +0000 ght Mobili	e? Dov	117nm vnload	13.1g the app f	0h54m or your i	16nn Pad or il	h 1.3	8g 7	m29s
US VER	KASE 13 10:09:0 ve ForeFlig	204°M 7 +0000 ght Mobile	e? Dov	vnload	13.1g the app f	Oh54m or your i	16nn Pad or if	n 1.4 Phone	8g 7	m29s
HERLS 2014-03-1 Don't har	KASE 13 10:09:0 ve ForeFlig rectional	204°M 7 +0000 ght Mobili CRS	e? Dov	vnload	13.1g the app f	0h54m or your i	16nn Pad or if Irch waypo	h 1.i	8g 7	m29s eta
HERLS 2014-03-1 Don't har U.S. WR FROM	KASE 13 10:09:0 ve ForeFilig sectional • TO	204°M 7 +0000 ght Mobile CRS IE 222°M	e? Dov EIII TOTALS 17cm	117nm vnload	13.1g the app find the app find	Oh54m or your i Q. See m 1.4g	16nm Pad or if arch waypo	n 1.3 Phone mi Dor emain	ng 7	m29s eta
HERLS 2014-03-1 Don't hav U.S. VFR FROM © KOEN	KASE I3 10:09:0 Ve ForeFlig To To To Content Content To	204°M 7 +0000 ght Mobile CRS IE 222°M 09 235°M	e? Dov EII TOTALS 17mm 69mm	117nm vnload	13.1g the app fi	Oh54m or your i Q See m 3.4g m 5.4g	16nm Pad or if rich wilypo 7m30a 6h24m	n 1.3 Phone mi Dor EMAIN 	8g 7 route NG 9m16s	m29s ETA 

# Miscellany

### **RADAR LEGENDS (WHEN FROM INTERNET)**



## RAIN - RADAR INTENSITY (DBZ) VS. COLOR

#### Based on RGB values assigned to dBZ range(s)

dBZ	Internet Color <sup>1</sup>	ADS-B Color <sup>2,3</sup>	SiriusXM Color <sup>3</sup>
5			none shown
10		none shown	
15			
20			
25			
30			
35			
40			
45			
50			
55			
60			
65			
70			
75			
95			

1. Colors are interpolated between levels when rendered on an image.

2. ADS-B (FIS-B) NEXRAD radar is displayed with 6 intensity ranges.

3. Some dBZ intensity/color divisions do not fall exactly on 5 dBZ lines, so are shown as close as possible to specification.

### MIXED RAIN/SNOW - RADAR INTENSITY (DBZ) VS. COLOR

dBZ	Internet Color <sup>1</sup>	ADS-B Color <sup>2,3,4</sup>	SiriusXM Color <sup>4</sup>
5			none shown
10		none shown	
15			
20			
25			
30			
35			
40			
45			
50			
55			
60			
65			
70			
75			

Based on RGB values assigned to dBZ range(s)

1. Colors are interpolated between levels when rendered on an image.

2. ADS-B (FIS-B) NEXRAD radar is displayed with 6 intensity ranges.

3. FIS-B NEXRAD doesn't include precipitation type, so "Mixed" is displayed at the same reflectivity colors as rain. See AIM Chapter 7: <u>http://tfmlearning.fly.faa.gov/publications/atpubs/aim/chap7/aim0701.html</u>

4. Some dBZ intensity/color divisions do not fall exactly on 5 dBZ lines, so are shown as close as possible to specification.

### SNOW - RADAR INTENSITY (DBZ) VS. COLOR

dBZ	Internet Color <sup>1</sup>	ADS-B Color <sup>2,3,4</sup>	SiriusXM Color <sup>4</sup>
5			none shown
10		none shown	
15			
20			
25			
30			
35			
40			
45			
50			
55			
60			
65			
70			

Based on RGB values assigned to dBZ range(s)

1. Colors are interpolated between levels when rendered on an image.

- 2. ADS-B (FIS-B) NEXRAD radar is displayed with 6 intensity ranges.
- 3. FIS-B NEXRAD doesn't include precipitation type, so "Snow" is displayed at the same reflectivity colors as rain. See AIM Chapter 7: <u>http://tfmlearning.fly.faa.gov/publications/atpubs/aim/chap7/aim0701.html</u>
- 4. Some dBZ intensity/color divisions do not fall exactly on 5 dBZ lines, so are shown as close as possible to specification.

### FOUR-COLOR RADAR - RADAR INTENSITY (DBZ) VS. COLOR

dBZ	Internet Color	ADS-B Color	SiriusXM Color <sup>1</sup>
5	none shown		
10		none shown	none shown
15			
20			
25			
30			
35			
40			
45			
50			
55			
60			
65			
70			
75			
95			

Based on RGB values assigned to dBZ range(s)

1. Baron Mobile Link/WXWorx radar does not display in 4-color mode. Only available with SiriuxXM when using the SXAR1\_<u>receiver</u>.

### BARON MOBILE LINK/WXWORX XM RADAR INTENSITY (DBZ) VS. COLOR

dBZ	Rain	Mixed Rain/Snow	Snow
5	none shown	none shown	none shown
10			
15			
20			
25			
30			
35			
40			
45			
50			
55			
60			
65			
70			
75			nono chown
95		none shown	none snown

Based on RGB values assigned to dBZ range(s)

1. Some Baron Mobile Link/WXWorx XM dBZ intensity/color divisions do not fall exactly on 5 dBZ lines, so are shown as close as possible to specification.

### RADAR LEGENDS (WHEN FROM INTERNET)

44	Lightning (in last 5 minutes)
0	Mesocyclone activity (Vortex of rising , rotating air)
<b>9</b>	Tornado
3	Hail

### **PIREP LEGEND**



### **ENHANCED SATELLITE**

The Enhanced Satellite layer uses a combination of visible and infrared satellite imagery to provide a global image of cloud formations.

Visible satellite images are primarily used during daytime and are "enhanced" with infrared highlights for the highest cloud tops. During the night, when visible satellite images are not available, the layer relies entirely on infrared images.

Shades of gray are used to represent the lowest-topped clouds; the darker the shade of gray, the lower the cloud tops.

Above the lightest shades of gray you may see blueish colors representing still colder and higher tops. Above this, shades of yellow, orange and red represent the coldest and highest cloud tops.



As the temperature of the atmosphere generally decreases with height, a pilot can get a pretty good idea which clouds are high-level and which are low-level based on the color or shades of gray depicted. **Cold cloud tops are often indicative of active thunderstorms that can produce severe or extreme convective turbulence.** 

One thing to note is that thick cirrus clouds at very high altitudes will also show up as very cold clouds even though they may not be associated with deep, moist convection. Most of the time these high cirrus clouds do not have the same cellular appearance as convective clouds and thus have very little variation in color.

See the temperatures that correspond to different colors in the table on the next page.

Temperature °C	Color	Relative Cloud Top Height
-83		Higher
-75		
-70		
-65		
-63		
-54		
-50.2		
-50		
-38		
-28		
+12		Lower

#### Based on RGB values assigned to temperature range(s)

### **COLOR IR SATELLITE**

Unlike the Enhanced Satellite layer, the Color IR Satellite layer relies solely on infrared satellite imagery to display global cloud coverage, and uses a more refined color scale to represent cloud top temperature.

The IR Satellite layer is a close cousin of the <u>static color IR satellite images</u> found in the Imagery view. The static images show not only the temperature of the cloud tops using the same colors, but also the temperature of the surface of the earth. This can make it difficult to know where clouds exist and where the sky is clear.

The main improvement of the Color IR Satellite layer over the static images is that it attempts to mask out regions where the sky is clear, showing the map background



in those regions instead of the surface temperature.

While this masking algorithm works a majority of the time, it can be difficult to get it right every single time simply using temperature alone. For example, anytime there's a shallow low-topped stratus deck, the tops of the clouds may actually be slightly warmer than the surface of the earth courtesy of a surface-based temperature inversion. So the algorithm may have a difficult time discerning where it is cloudy or clear. It's important to always overlay the Sky Coverage layer to pick up on these issues when they occur.

You can learn more about the Color IR Satellite layer and how it can be used to gauge cloud height by reading this blog post by weather scientist Scott Dennstaedt.

See the temperatures that correspond to different colors in the table on the next page.

Temperature °C	Color	Relative Cloud Top Height
-72		Higher
-68		_
-64		
-60		
-56		
-52		
-48		
-44		
-40		
-36		
-32		
-28		
-24		
-20		
-16		
-12		
-8		
-4		
0		
4		
8		
12		
16		
20		
24		
28		
32		
47	Transparent	Lower

Based on RGB values assigned to temperature range(s)

### KML USER MAP SHAPES

The User Map Shapes feature enables you to import and display custom KML shape files in ForeFlight's Maps view.



User Map Shapes KML files are imported using iTunes, and while multiple User Map Shapes KML files can be imported at once, only one can be displayed at a time. The KML files must have the ".kml" suffix and can be any name **except** "user\_waypoints.kml" which is reserved for importing user waypoints. User Map Shapes KML files must be smaller than 4 MB to displayed in ForeFlight Mobile. All User Map Shapes KML files that have been imported are shown in the list on the bottom of the right column in the Map Selection drop-down menu.

For complete details about creating and correctly naming a KML User Map Shape file for import, along with instructions for importing the file into ForeFlight Mobile, as well as sample KML files please visit: <u>https://foreflight.com/support/user-map-shapes/</u>



## Learning More

To learn even more about ForeFlight Mobile, please visit our website for frequently asked questions (FAQs) and video tutorials.

FAQs: www.foreflight.com/support

Videos: <u>www.foreflight.com/videos</u>

"ForeFlight 101 - Beginner Tutorial" and "ForeFlight 201 - Advanced Course" video presentations: <a href="https://www.foreflight.com/support/training/">www.foreflight.com/support/training/</a>

To help us at ForeFlight learn more about how you fly, please send any and all feedback on our applications to <u>team@foreflight.com</u> - we read and respond to each note we receive. We also get a kick out of hearing your flying stories, so please do share!

## Pilot's Guide Change History

### For v9.0.1 <u>NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 9.2 or LATER</u>

- <u>User Map Shapes</u> files no longer require the "ffkml" suffix in the filename.
- Pilots flying with a Garmin <u>GTX345</u> can now set the Synthetic Vision view "straight & level" (while in level flight) by tapping the AHRS button and choosing <u>"Zero Pitch & Bank."</u>

### For v9.0 <u>NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 9.2 or LATER</u>

- Checklist (included with Plus subscriptions, also available separately) allows you to add and customize checklists using templates for many common GA aircraft.
- App Theme lets you pick a "Light" (similar to current) or "Dark" app color-scheme. App Theme does not affect the color of charts, which are still set separately using Color Inversion (see version 8.3 notes below).
- Glide Advisor<sup>™</sup> uses your aircraft's glide ratio, current GPS altitude AGL, surrounding terrain height, and winds aloft (either Packed before your flight, or updated in-flight via ADS-B or SiriusXM) to present a continually-updated ring showing your glide range. IMPORTANT: Prior to use, Glide Advisor must be configured with your aircraft's best glide speed and glide ratio in More > Aircraft, or in the Maps Settings > Glide Settings.
- User Map Shapes allow a pilot to load a KML shape file into the app using iTunes to be displayed on the Maps page. The KML file can include paths, areas, shading, points, etc... and displays independently of the underlying route. NOTE: ForeFlight Track Log KML files cannot currently be displayed as a User Map Shape.
- When using the SiriusXM SXAR1, <u>SiriuxXM audio channels</u> are now supported; audio is controlled from ForeFlight Mobile and can be played through a Bluetooth device paired with the SXAR1.
- Microsoft Office <u>Documents</u> (Word: DOCX, Excel: XLSX, and PowerPoint: PPTX) can now be imported for viewing directly in the Documents tab. Microsoft Office documents can be imported via linked Dropbox, Box, or S3 account, or using iTunes. However unlike

PDF documents, Microsoft Office documents cannot currently be annotated in ForeFlight Mobile.

- ✤ A <u>Surface Wind Analysis</u> overlay is now available to pilots flying with a SiriusXM SXAR1 weather receiver. This model-based layer shows predicted surface winds over the next hour in a regularly-spaced, densely-populated grid across the USA, providing a better overall picture of surface winds than the METAR-based Surface Winds which are irregularly spaced due to actual airport locations.
- The <u>Device Disconnect Alert</u> is triggered if the Bluetooth or WiFi connection to a wireless device, such as Stratus 2S, a Garmin Flight Stream 210, or a SiriusXM SXAR1, is lost.
- The <u>Traffic Pattern Advisor</u> Teardrop traffic pattern entry shape has been refined to represent a more traditional "teardrop" shape.
- Customers can now use the <u>ICAO flight plan form</u> to file with VFR (DC SFRA) flight rules and a DVFR flight type.
- MGRS coordinates can now be done entered directly; it is no longer necessary to add MGRS@... before the coordinate.
- For pilots flying in far-northern or southern latitudes or in areas of larger magnetic variation, ForeFlight Mobile now supports entry of both True and Magnetic bearing from Named Fixes, Airports, Navaids, and User Waypoints in the <u>Flight Plan and Search boxes</u>. For example: LAX/276M/20.
- AeroFly FS 2 PC flight simulator can now send simulated position data to ForeFlight Mobile.
- Moved Stratus ADS-B receiver information, SXAR1, and Baron Mobile Linx/WXWorx, to the ForeFlight Connect section.

### For v8.3 <u>NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 9.2 or LATER</u>

- The Color Inversion setting allows you to invert colors for easier lowlight viewing on the <u>Maps</u>, <u>Plates</u>, and <u>Documents</u> views.
- The new <u>Color IR Satellite</u> overlay on the Maps view provides a visualization of cloud top temperature that's helpful for minimizing the risk of airframe icing.
- SiriusXM's SXAR1 weather receiver now provides two additional weather overlays in ForeFlight: <u>Echo Tops and Cloud Tops</u>.
- The new <u>Destination Weather Frequency</u> callout provides you with your destination airport's ATIS, ASOS, or AWOS frequency as you near the airport.

- The <u>Climb Gradient instrument</u> displays your climb performance in feet per nautical mile.
- Added <u>MGRS</u> as a default coordinate system, in More > Settings > Unites/Time > Coordinates.

### For v8.2 NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 9.2 or LATER

- The global data-driven Aeronautical Maps now provide <u>additional</u> <u>aeronautical data types</u>, including airspace altitudes, ARTCC frequency stamps, Mode C rings, Class E surface areas, TRSAs, and SATRs.
- New in-flight alerts for sink rate and 500' AGL provide added situational awareness. Also, <u>Runway Proximity Advisor</u> now tells you how many feet of runway remain when you enter a runway at either end.
- The Screen Brightness slider in the Maps Settings is now linked to the iPad's brightness slider and also allows for additional dimming if the lowest setting of the iPad's slider is not dark enough.
- A new optional field in the flight plan form allows you to <u>file with a call</u> sign. This field can be enabled in More > Settings > File & Brief.
- ForeFlight's filing capabilities <u>now support</u> VFR and IFR flight plans within or between both the U.S. and Canada, in either direction.
- Updated <u>Rain Radar Intensity color mapping</u> for SiriusXM SXAR1.

### For v8.1 NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 9.2 or LATER

- For pilots who prefer a portable, satellite weather solution, ForeFlight Mobile supports the <u>SiriusXM</u>SXAR1 weather receiver.
- To preserve documents on the iPad in the case of an inadvertent account "unlinking" or a system connection issue, the Smart Binder created when you link your ForeFlight account to a Dropbox, Box, or Amazon S3 account is no longer deleted immediately after the account is un-linked or the system connection is interrupted. See full details in the updated <u>Document Syncing</u> section.

## For v8.0 NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 9.2 or LATER

Introducing the <u>Global Data-driven Aeronautical maps</u>, including a selectable Aeronautical data layer (requires Basic Plus, Pro Plus, or Business Pro subscription) can be overlaid over any underlying chart, or can be displayed over a "light" or "dark" background map.

- TFR Alerts will display a visual and/or audio alert if your track will take you into a known TFR within the next 5 minutes, even if the TFR layer is not selected ON.
- Added support for the Garmin Flight Stream 510, the Garmin GDL39 family of portable ADS-B receivers, and L3 Lynx family of installed ADS-B transceivers, via the ForeFlight Connect program.
- Color updates for Download and Pause buttons on More > Downloads.
- A firmware update for the Stratus 2 enables support for the <u>Stratus</u>
  <u>ESG</u> ADS-B Out transponder.

### For v7.7 NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 9.2 or LATER

- A new weather layer called "<u>Radar (Lowest Tilt)</u>" provides a better view of where precipitation is actually reaching the ground. The older Radar layer is still available but has been renamed "Radar (Composite)". Radar (Lowest Tilt) is only available while connected to the Internet. Radar received via ADS-B is Composite.
- A new option in <u>Maps Settings</u> called "Four-color Radar" allows you to display radar in a low-resolution color scheme that mimics most onboard radars. This setting works for both radar layers.
- A "Descent to Dest" instrument has been added to the <u>Instrument</u> <u>Panel</u>, showing the rate of descent required to reach 0' AGL at your destination given your current speed and altitude.
- The Lightning layer has improved decluttering to show more lightning at once, indicating where dangerous convection may be occurring.
- A firmware update for Stratus 1S and 2S devices adds additional settings for AHRS calibration and Stratus Log recording, and enables support for the <u>Stratus ESG</u> ADS-B Out transponder.

### For v7.6 NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 8.2 or LATER

- Logbook enhancements, including unlimited imagery attachments, FAA 8710 report exporting, medical and knowledge test certificates, and type ratings. See the Logbook in ForeFlight Mobile guide for details.
- ForeFlight can connect via Bluetooth to the new Garmin GTX 345/335 ADS-B Out transponders to receive ADS-B weather and traffic, GPS position, and AHRS information.
- ForeFlight can connect via Wifi to the <u>Avidyne IFD 540/440</u> panel avionics to receive GPS and flight plans from the Avidyne.

## For v7.5 NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 8.2 or LATER

- Introducing two new <u>subscription plans</u> for individuals: Basic Plus and Pro Plus, along with Business Pro for multi-pilot account. Each offers new features and added value over the previous plans.
- ForeFlight Logbook is now available with Basic Plus and Pro Plus subscriptions, allowing pilots to import their existing logbook and log new flights automatically.
- Area Forecast Discussions are available for US airports in the Weather tab on the Airports view, and in airport popups in the Maps view.
- Document and Plate <u>Annotation</u> controls (including color and line selection) have been made more consistent and easier to use across different types of Annotations.

## For v7.4 <u>NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 8.2 or LATER</u>

- The wall-of-text briefing has been upgraded to <u>ForeFlight Briefing</u>, giving you a graphical, interactive, and translated pre-flight briefing.
- Track Logs can start and stop recording automatically at takeoff and landing, and are automatically uploaded to the Cloud after the flight.
- Center Weather Advisories (CWAs) and international SIGMETs have been added to the <u>AIR/SIGMETs layer</u> on the Maps view.
- The <u>AIR/SIGMET/CWAs layer</u> can be filtered by the type of hazard shown (e.g., lcing, turbulence, IFR, convection).
- Support has been added for Apple's Spotlight Search, which now includes relevant results from inside the app.

### For v7.3 <u>NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 8.0 or LATER</u>

- ForeFlight Mobile supports two-way flight plan transfer with select Garmin avionics through the <u>Garmin Connext Flight Stream 210</u>.
- A tool allowing you to view and remove other devices signed in to your ForeFlight account has been added to <u>More > Accounts</u>.

### For v7.2 <u>NOTE: REQUIRES iOS 8.0 or LATER</u>

ForeFlight Mobile can connect to the <u>Garmin Connext FlightStream</u> <u>110 and 210</u> bluetooth gateways to receive ADS-B and GPS data from other Garmin avionics.

- ForeFlight Mobile can connect to the new <u>Stratus</u> 1S and 2S ADS-B receivers.
- Aircraft Weight & Balance profiles (ForeFlight Mobile Pro subscription required) are now <u>synced</u> between devices when Synchronize User Data is enabled in More > Settings.
- Flight Notification Graphics are included with flight alerts on the File & Brief page.
- The ForeFlight app on Apple Watch has an improved <u>Airports page</u>, allowing for weather information from up to 30 airports to be viewed: the ten nearest airports to your position (NBY), your ten most recently viewed airports (REC), and your top ten favorite airports (FAV).